

Office of Management and Budget
2 CFR Part 230

**Cost Principles for Non-Profit
Organizations
(OMB Circular A-122)**

occurs, the governmental unit should be guided by the requirements in Appendix C to this part relating to the development of billing rates and documentation requirements, and should advise the cognizant agency of any billed services. Reviews of these types of services (including reviews of costing/billing methodology, profits or losses, etc.) will be made on a case-by-case basis as warranted by the circumstances involved.

3. Indirect cost allocations not using rates. In certain situations, a governmental unit, because of the nature of its awards, may be required to develop a cost allocation plan that distributes indirect (and, in some cases, direct) costs to the specific funding sources. In these cases, a narrative cost allocation methodology should be developed, documented, maintained for audit, or submitted, as appropriate, to the cognizant agency for review, negotiation, and approval.

4. Appeals. If a dispute arises in a negotiation of an indirect cost rate (or other rate) between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency.

5. Collection of unallowable costs and erroneous payments. Costs specifically identified as unallowable and charged to Federal awards either directly or indirectly will be refunded (including interest chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal agency regulations).

6. OMB assistance. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies and/or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

[FR Doc. 05-16649 Filed 8-30-05; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 3110-01-P

OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET

2 CFR Part 230

Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations (OMB Circular A-122)

AGENCY: Office of Management and Budget.

ACTION: Relocation of policy guidance to 2 CFR chapter II.

SUMMARY: The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) is relocating Circular A-122, "Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations," to Title 2 in the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), subtitle A, chapter II, part 230. This relocation is part of our broader initiative to create 2 CFR as a single location where the public can find both OMB guidance for grants and agreements and the associated Federal agency implementing regulations. The broader initiative provides a good foundation for streamlining and simplifying the policy framework for grants and agreements, one objective of OMB and Federal

agency efforts to implement the Federal Financial Assistance Management Improvement Act of 1999 (Pub. L. 106-107).

DATES: Part 230 is effective August 31, 2005. This document republishes the existing OMB Circular A-122, which already is in effect.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Gil Tran, Office of Federal Financial Management, Office of Management and Budget, telephone 202-395-3052 (direct) or 202-395-3993 (main office) and e-mail: *Hai.M.Tran@omb.eop.gov*.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION: On May 10, 2004 [69 FR 25970], we revised the three OMB circulars containing Federal cost principles. The purpose of those revisions was to simplify the cost principles by making the descriptions of similar cost items consistent across the circulars where possible, thereby reducing the possibility of misinterpretation. Those revisions, a result of OMB and Federal agency efforts to implement Public Law 106-107, were effective on June 9, 2004.

In this document, we relocate OMB Circular A-122 to the CFR, in Title 2 which was established on May 11, 2004 [69 FR 26276] as a central location for OMB and Federal agency policies on grants and agreements.

Our relocation of OMB Circular A-122 does not change the substance of the circular. Other than adjustments needed to conform to the formatting requirements of the CFR, this document relocates in 2 CFR the version of OMB Circular A-122 as revised by the May 10, 2004 notice.

List of Subjects in 2 CFR Part 230

Accounting, Grant programs, Grants administration, Non-profit organizations, Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

Dated: August 8, 2005.

Joshua B. Bolten,
Director.

Authority and Issuance

■ For the reasons set forth above, the Office of Management and Budget amends 2 CFR Subtitle A, chapter II, by adding a part 230 as set forth below.

PART 230—COST PRINCIPLES FOR NON-PROFIT ORGANIZATIONS (OMB CIRCULAR A-122)

Sec.	Purpose.
230.5	230.10
230.10	230.15
230.15	230.20
230.20	230.25
230.25	230.30
230.30	230.35
230.35	230.40
230.40	

230.45 Relationship to previous issuance.
230.50 Information Contact.
Appendix A to Part 230—General Principles
Appendix B to Part 230—Selected Items of Cost

Appendix C to Part 230—Non-Profit Organizations Not Subject to This Part

Authority: 31 U.S.C. 503; 31 U.S.C. 1111; 41 U.S.C. 405; Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970; E.O. 11541, 35 FR 10737, 3 CFR, 1966-1970, p. 939

§ 230.5 Purpose.

This part establishes principles for determining costs of grants, contracts and other agreements with non-profit organizations.

§ 230.10 Scope.

(a) This part does not apply to colleges and universities which are covered by 2 CFR part 220 Cost Principles for Educational Institutions (OMB Circular A-21); State, local, and federally-recognized Indian tribal governments which are covered by 2 CFR part 225 Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments (OMB Circular A-87); or hospitals.

(b) The principles deal with the subject of cost determination, and make no attempt to identify the circumstances or dictate the extent of agency and non-profit organization participation in the financing of a particular project. Provision for profit or other increment above cost is outside the scope of this part.

§ 230.15 Policy.

The principles are designed to provide that the Federal Government bear its fair share of costs except where restricted or prohibited by law. The principles do not attempt to prescribe the extent of cost sharing or matching on grants, contracts, or other agreements. However, such cost sharing or matching shall not be accomplished through arbitrary limitations on individual cost elements by Federal agencies.

§ 230.20 Applicability.

(a) These principles shall be used by all Federal agencies in determining the costs of work performed by non-profit organizations under grants, cooperative agreements, cost reimbursement contracts, and other contracts in which costs are used in pricing, administration, or settlement. All of these instruments are hereafter referred to as awards. The principles do not apply to awards under which an organization is not required to account to the Federal Government for actual costs incurred.

(b) All cost reimbursement subawards (subgrants, subcontracts, etc.) are subject to those Federal cost principles applicable to the particular organization concerned. Thus, if a subaward is to a non-profit organization, this part shall apply; if a subaward is to a commercial organization, the cost principles applicable to commercial concerns shall apply; if a subaward is to a college or university, 2 CFR part 220 shall apply; if a subaward is to a State, local, or federally-recognized Indian tribal government, 2 CFR part 225 shall apply.

(c) Exclusion of some non-profit organizations. Some non-profit organizations, because of their size and nature of operations, can be considered to be similar to commercial concerns for purpose of applicability of cost principles. Such non-profit organizations shall operate under Federal cost principles applicable to commercial concerns. A listing of these organizations is contained in Appendix C to this part. Other organizations may be added from time to time.

§ 230.25 Definitions.

(a) Non-profit organization means any corporation, trust, association, cooperative, or other organization which:

(1) Is operated primarily for scientific, educational, service, charitable, or similar purposes in the public interest;

(2) Is not organized primarily for profit; and

(3) Uses its net proceeds to maintain, improve, and/or expand its operations. For this purpose, the term "non-profit organization" excludes colleges and universities; hospitals; State, local, and federally-recognized Indian tribal governments; and those non-profit organizations which are excluded from coverage of this part in accordance with § 230.20(c).

(b) Prior approval means securing the awarding agency's permission in advance to incur cost for those items that are designated as requiring prior approval by the part and its Appendices. Generally this permission will be in writing. Where an item of cost requiring prior approval is specified in the budget of an award, approval of the budget constitutes approval of that cost.

§ 230.30 OMB responsibilities.

OMB may grant exceptions to the requirements of this part when permissible under existing law. However, in the interest of achieving maximum uniformity, exceptions will be permitted only in highly unusual circumstances.

§ 230.35 Federal agency responsibilities.

The head of each Federal agency that awards and administers grants and agreements subject to this part is responsible for requesting approval from and/or consulting with OMB (as applicable) for deviations from the guidance in the appendices to this part and performing the applicable functions specified in the appendices to this part.

§ 230.40 Effective date of changes.

The provisions of this part are effective August 31, 2005. Implementation shall be phased in by incorporating the provisions into new awards made after the start of the organization's next fiscal year. For existing awards, the new principles may be applied if an organization and the cognizant Federal agency agree. Earlier implementation, or a delay in implementation of individual provisions, is also permitted by mutual agreement between an organization and the cognizant Federal agency.

§ 230.45 Relationship to previous issuance.

(a) The guidance in this part previously was issued as OMB Circular A-122. Appendix A to this part contains the guidance that was in Attachment A (general principles) to the OMB circular; Appendix B contains the guidance that was in Attachment B (selected items of cost) to the OMB circular; and Appendix C contains the information that was in Attachment C (non-profit organizations not subject to the Circular) to the OMB circular.

(b) Historically, OMB Circular A-122 superseded cost principles issued by individual agencies for non-profit organizations.

§ 230.50 Information contact.

Further information concerning this part may be obtained by contacting the Office of Federal Financial Management, OMB, Washington, DC 20503, telephone (202) 395-3993.

Appendix A to Part 230—General Principles

General Principles

Table of Contents

- A. Basic Considerations
 - 1. Composition of total costs
 - 2. Factors affecting allowability of costs
 - 3. Reasonable costs
 - 4. Allocable costs
 - 5. Applicable credits
 - 6. Advance understandings
 - 7. Conditional exemptions
- B. Direct Costs
- C. Indirect Costs
- D. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates
 - 1. General

- 2. Simplified allocation method
- 3. Multiple allocation base method
- 4. Direct allocation method
- 5. Special indirect cost rates
- E. Negotiation and Approval of Indirect Cost Rates
 - 1. Definitions
 - 2. Negotiation and approval of rates

General Principles

A. Basic Considerations

1. Composition of total costs. The total cost of an award is the sum of the allowable direct and allocable indirect costs less any applicable credits.

2. Factors affecting allowability of costs. To be allowable under an award, costs must meet the following general criteria:

- a. Be reasonable for the performance of the award and be allocable thereto under these principles.
- b. Conform to any limitations or exclusions set forth in these principles or in the award as to types or amount of cost items.
- c. Be consistent with policies and procedures that apply uniformly to both federally-financed and other activities of the organization.
- d. Be accorded consistent treatment.
- e. Be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).
- f. Not be included as a cost or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements of any other federally-financed program in either the current or a prior period.
- g. Be adequately documented.

3. Reasonable costs. A cost is reasonable if, in its nature or amount, it does not exceed that which would be incurred by a prudent person under the circumstances prevailing at the time the decision was made to incur the costs. The question of the reasonableness of specific costs must be scrutinized with particular care in connection with organizations or separate divisions thereof which receive the preponderance of their support from awards made by Federal agencies. In determining the reasonableness of a given cost, consideration shall be given to:

a. Whether the cost is of a type generally recognized as ordinary and necessary for the operation of the organization or the performance of the award.

b. The restraints or requirements imposed by such factors as generally accepted sound business practices, arms length bargaining, Federal and State laws and regulations, and terms and conditions of the award.

c. Whether the individuals concerned acted with prudence in the circumstances, considering their responsibilities to the organization, its members, employees, and clients, the public at large, and the Federal Government.

d. Significant deviations from the established practices of the organization which may unjustifiably increase the award costs.

4. Allocable costs. a. A cost is allocable to a particular cost objective, such as a grant, contract, project, service, or other activity, in accordance with the relative benefits received. A cost is allocable to a Federal award if it is treated consistently with other

costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances and if it:

- (1) Is incurred specifically for the award.
- (2) Benefits both the award and other work and can be distributed in reasonable proportion to the benefits received, or
- (3) Is necessary to the overall operation of the organization, although a direct relationship to any particular cost objective cannot be shown.

b. Any cost allocable to a particular award or other cost objective under these principles may not be shifted to other Federal awards to overcome funding deficiencies, or to avoid restrictions imposed by law or by the terms of the award.

5. Applicable credits. a. The term applicable credits refers to those receipts, or reduction of expenditures which operate to offset or reduce expense items that are allocable to awards as direct or indirect costs. Typical examples of such transactions are: Purchase discounts, rebates or allowances, recoveries or indemnities on losses, insurance refunds, and adjustments of overpayments or erroneous charges. To the extent that such credits accruing or received by the organization relate to allowable cost, they shall be credited to the Federal Government either as a cost reduction or cash refund, as appropriate.

b. In some instances, the amounts received from the Federal Government to finance organizational activities or service operations should be treated as applicable credits. Specifically, the concept of netting such credit items against related expenditures should be applied by the organization in determining the rates or amounts to be charged to Federal awards for services rendered whenever the facilities or other resources used in providing such services have been financed directly, in whole or in part, by Federal funds.

c. For rules covering program income (i.e., gross income earned from federally-supported activities) see § 215.24 of 2 CFR part 215 Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations (OMB Circular A-110).

6. Advance understandings. Under any given award, the reasonableness and allocability of certain items of costs may be difficult to determine. This is particularly true in connection with organizations that receive a preponderance of their support from Federal agencies. In order to avoid subsequent disallowance or dispute based on unreasonableness or nonallocability, it is often desirable to seek a written agreement with the cognizant or awarding agency in advance of the incurrence of special or unusual costs. The absence of an advance agreement on any element of cost will not, in itself, affect the reasonableness or allocability of that element.

7. Conditional exemptions. a. OMB authorizes conditional exemption from OMB administrative requirements and cost principles for certain Federal programs with statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding, that are identified by a Federal agency and approved by the head of the Executive

department or establishment. A Federal agency shall consult with OMB during its consideration of whether to grant such an exemption.

b. To promote efficiency in State and local program administration, when Federal non-entitlement programs with common purposes have specific statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding and where most of the State agency's resources come from non-Federal sources, Federal agencies may exempt these covered State-administered, non-entitlement grant programs from certain OMB grants management requirements. The exemptions would be from all but the allocability of costs provisions of Appendix A, subsection C.e. of 2 CFR part 225 (OMB Circular A-87); Appendix A, Section C.4. of 2 CFR part 220 (OMB Circular A-21); Section A.4. of this appendix; and from all of the administrative requirements provisions of 2 CFR part 215 (OMB Circular A-110) and the agencies' grants management common rule.

c. When a Federal agency provides this flexibility, as a prerequisite to a State's exercising this option, a State must adopt its own written fiscal and administrative requirements for expending and accounting for all funds, which are consistent with the provisions of 2 CFR part 225 (OMB Circular A-87), and extend such policies to all subrecipients. These fiscal and administrative requirements must be sufficiently specific to ensure that: Funds are used in compliance with all applicable Federal statutory and regulatory provisions, costs are reasonable and necessary for operating these programs, and funds are not to be used for general expenses required to carry out other responsibilities of a State or its subrecipients.

B. Direct Costs

1. Direct costs are those that can be identified specifically with a particular final cost objective, i.e., a particular award, project, service, or other direct activity of an organization. However, a cost may not be assigned to an award as a direct cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstance, has been allocated to an award as an indirect cost. Costs identified specifically with awards are direct costs of the awards and are to be assigned directly thereto. Costs identified specifically with other final cost objectives of the organization are direct costs of those cost objectives and are not to be assigned to other awards directly or indirectly.

2. Any direct cost of a minor amount may be treated as an indirect cost for reasons of practicality where the accounting treatment for such cost is consistently applied to all final cost objectives.

3. The cost of certain activities are not allowable as charges to Federal awards (see, for example, fundraising costs in paragraph 17 of Appendix B to this part). However, even though these costs are unallowable for purposes of computing charges to Federal awards, they nonetheless must be treated as direct costs for purposes of determining indirect cost rates and be allocated their share of the organization's indirect costs if they represent activities which include the

salaries of personnel, occupy space, and benefit from the organization's indirect costs.

4. The costs of activities performed primarily as a service to members, clients, or the general public when significant and necessary to the organization's mission must be treated as direct costs whether or not allowable and be allocated an equitable share of indirect costs. Some examples of these types of activities include:

- a. Maintenance of membership rolls, subscriptions, publications, and related functions.
- b. Providing services and information to members, legislative or administrative bodies, or the public.
- c. Promotion, lobbying, and other forms of public relations.
- d. Meetings and conferences except those held to conduct the general administration of the organization.
- e. Maintenance, protection, and investment of special funds not used in operation of the organization.
- f. Administration of group benefits on behalf of members or clients, including life and hospital insurance, annuity or retirement plans, financial aid, etc.

C. Indirect Costs

1. Indirect costs are those that have been incurred for common or joint objectives and cannot be readily identified with a particular final cost objective. Direct cost of minor amounts may be treated as indirect costs under the conditions described in subparagraph B.2 of this appendix. After direct costs have been determined and assigned directly to awards or other work as appropriate, indirect costs are those remaining to be allocated to benefiting cost objectives. A cost may not be allocated to an award as an indirect cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, has been assigned to an award as a direct cost.

2. Because of the diverse characteristics and accounting practices of non-profit organizations, it is not possible to specify the types of cost which may be classified as indirect cost in all situations. However, typical examples of indirect cost for many non-profit organizations may include depreciation or use allowances on buildings and equipment, the costs of operating and maintaining facilities, and general administration and general expenses, such as the salaries and expenses of executive officers, personnel administration, and accounting.

3. Indirect costs shall be classified within two broad categories: "Facilities" and "Administration." "Facilities" is defined as depreciation and use allowances on buildings, equipment and capital improvement, interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements, and operations and maintenance expenses. "Administration" is defined as general administration and general expenses such as the director's office, accounting, personnel, library expenses and all other types of expenditures not listed specifically under one of the subcategories of "Facilities" (including cross allocations from other pools, where applicable). See indirect cost rate reporting requirements in

subparagraphs D.2.e and D.3.g of this appendix.

D. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates

1. General. a. Where a non-profit organization has only one major function, or where all its major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs and the computation of an indirect cost rate may be accomplished through simplified allocation procedures, as described in subparagraph D.2 of this appendix.

b. Where an organization has several major functions which benefit from its indirect costs in varying degrees, allocation of indirect costs may require the accumulation of such costs into separate cost groupings which then are allocated individually to benefiting functions by means of a base which best measures the relative degree of benefit. The indirect costs allocated to each function are then distributed to individual awards and other activities included in that function by means of an indirect cost rate(s).

c. The determination of what constitutes an organization's major functions will depend on its purpose in being; the types of services it renders to the public, its clients, and its members; and the amount of effort it devotes to such activities as fundraising, public information and membership activities.

d. Specific methods for allocating indirect costs and computing indirect cost rates along with the conditions under which each method should be used are described in subparagraphs D.2 through 5 of this appendix.

e. The base period for the allocation of indirect costs is the period in which such costs are incurred and accumulated for allocation to work performed in that period. The base period normally should coincide with the organization's fiscal year but, in any event, shall be so selected as to avoid inequities in the allocation of the costs.

2. Simplified allocation method. a. Where an organization's major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs may be accomplished by separating the organization's total costs for the base period as either direct or indirect, and dividing the total allowable indirect costs (net of applicable credits) by an equitable distribution base. The result of this process is an indirect cost rate which is used to distribute indirect costs to individual awards. The rate should be expressed as the percentage which the total amount of allowable indirect costs bears to the base selected. This method should also be used where an organization has only one major function encompassing a number of individual projects or activities, and may be used where the level of Federal awards to an organization is relatively small.

b. Both the direct costs and the indirect costs shall exclude capital expenditures and unallowable costs. However, unallowable costs which represent activities must be included in the direct costs under the conditions described in subparagraph B.3 of this appendix.

c. The distribution base may be total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and

other distorting items, such as major subcontracts or subgrants), direct salaries and wages, or other base which results in an equitable distribution. The distribution base shall generally exclude participant support costs as defined in paragraph 32 of Appendix B.

d. Except where a special rate(s) is required in accordance with subparagraph 5 of this appendix, the indirect cost rate developed under the above principles is applicable to all awards at the organization. If a special rate(s) is required, appropriate modifications shall be made in order to develop the special rate(s).

e. For an organization that receives more than \$10 million in Federal funding of direct costs in a fiscal year, a breakout of the indirect cost component into two broad categories, Facilities and Administration as defined in subparagraph C.3 of this appendix, is required. The rate in each case shall be stated as the percentage which the amount of the particular indirect cost category (*i.e.*, Facilities or Administration) is of the distribution base identified with that category.

3. Multiple allocation base method.

a. General. Where an organization's indirect costs benefit its major functions in varying degrees, indirect costs shall be accumulated into separate cost groupings, as described in subparagraph D.3.b of this appendix. Each grouping shall then be allocated individually to benefiting functions by means of a base which best measures the relative benefits. The default allocation bases by cost pool are described in subparagraph D.3.c of this appendix.

b. Identification of indirect costs. Cost groupings shall be established so as to permit the allocation of each grouping on the basis of benefits provided to the major functions. Each grouping shall constitute a pool of expenses that are of like character in terms of functions they benefit and in terms of the allocation base which best measures the relative benefits provided to each function. The groupings are classified within the two broad categories: "Facilities" and "Administration," as described in subparagraph C.3 of this appendix. The indirect cost pools are defined as follows:

(1) Depreciation and use allowances. The expenses under this heading are the portion of the costs of the organization's buildings, capital improvements to land and buildings, and equipment which are computed in accordance with paragraph 11 of Appendix B to this part ("Depreciation and use allowances").

(2) Interest. Interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements are computed in accordance with paragraph 23 of Appendix B to this part ("Interest").

(3) Operation and maintenance expenses. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the administration, operation, maintenance, preservation, and protection of the organization's physical plant. They include expenses normally incurred for such items as: janitorial and utility services; repairs and ordinary or normal alterations of buildings, furniture and equipment; care of grounds;

maintenance and operation of buildings and other plant facilities; security; earthquake and disaster preparedness; environmental safety; hazardous waste disposal; property, liability and other insurance relating to property; space and capital leasing; facility planning and management; and, central receiving. The operation and maintenance expenses category shall also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, depreciation and use allowances, and interest costs.

(4) General administration and general expenses. (a) The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the overall general executive and administrative offices of the organization and other expenses of a general nature which do not relate solely to any major function of the organization. This category shall also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, operation and maintenance expense, depreciation and use allowances, and interest costs. Examples of this category include central offices, such as the director's office, the office of finance, business services, budget and planning, personnel, safety and risk management, general counsel, management information systems, and library costs.

(b) In developing this cost pool, special care should be exercised to ensure that costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances are treated consistently as either direct or indirect costs. For example, salaries of technical staff, project supplies, project publication, telephone toll charges, computer costs, travel costs, and specialized services costs shall be treated as direct costs wherever identifiable to a particular program. The salaries and wages of administrative and pooled clerical staff should normally be treated as indirect costs. Direct charging of these costs may be appropriate where a major project or activity explicitly requires and budgets for administrative or clerical services and other individuals involved can be identified with the program or activity. Items such as office supplies, postage, local telephone costs, periodicals and memberships should normally be treated as indirect costs.

c. Allocation bases. Actual conditions shall be taken into account in selecting the base to be used in allocating the expenses in each grouping to benefiting functions. The essential consideration in selecting a method or a base is that it is the one best suited for assigning the pool of costs to cost objectives in accordance with benefits derived; a traceable cause and effect relationship; or logic and reason, where neither the cause nor the effect of the relationship is determinable. When an allocation can be made by assignment of a cost grouping directly to the function benefited, the allocation shall be made in that manner. When the expenses in a cost grouping are more general in nature, the allocation shall be made through the use of a selected base which produces results that are equitable to both the Federal Government and the organization. The distribution shall be made in accordance with the bases described herein unless it can be demonstrated that the use of a different base would result in a more equitable allocation

of the costs, or that a more readily available base would not increase the costs charged to sponsored awards. The results of special cost studies (such as an engineering utility study) shall not be used to determine and allocate the indirect costs to sponsored awards.

(1) Depreciation and use allowances. Depreciation and use allowances expenses shall be allocated in the following manner:

(a) Depreciation or use allowances on buildings used exclusively in the conduct of a single function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, shall be assigned to that function.

(b) Depreciation or use allowances on buildings used for more than one function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, shall be allocated to the individual functions performed in each building on the basis of usable square feet of space, excluding common areas, such as hallways, stairwells, and restrooms.

(c) Depreciation or use allowances on buildings, capital improvements and equipment related space (e.g., individual rooms, and laboratories) used jointly by more than one function (as determined by the users of the space) shall be treated as follows. The cost of each jointly used unit of space shall be allocated to the benefiting functions on the basis of either the employees and other users on a full-time equivalent (FTE) basis or salaries and wages of those individual functions benefiting from the use of that space; or organization-wide employee FTEs or salaries and wages applicable to the benefiting functions of the organization.

(d) Depreciation or use allowances on certain capital improvements to land, such as paved parking areas, fences, sidewalks, and the like, not included in the cost of buildings, shall be allocated to user categories on a FTE basis and distributed to major functions in proportion to the salaries and wages of all employees applicable to the functions.

(2) Interest. Interest costs shall be allocated in the same manner as the depreciation or use allowances on the buildings, equipment and capital equipments to which the interest relates.

(3) Operation and maintenance expenses. Operation and maintenance expenses shall be allocated in the same manner as the depreciation and use allowances.

(4) General administration and general expenses. General administration and general expenses shall be allocated to benefiting functions based on modified total direct costs (MTDC), as described in subparagraph D.3.f of this appendix. The expenses included in this category could be grouped first according to major functions of the organization to which they render services or provide benefits. The aggregate expenses of each group shall then be allocated to benefiting functions based on MTDC.

d. Order of distribution. (1) Indirect cost categories consisting of depreciation and use allowances, interest, operation and maintenance, and general administration and general expenses shall be allocated in that order to the remaining indirect cost categories as well as to the major functions of the organization. Other cost categories could be allocated in the order determined to be most appropriate by the organization.

When cross allocation of costs is made as provided in subparagraph D.3.d.(2) of this appendix, this order of allocation does not apply.

(2) Normally, an indirect cost category will be considered closed once it has been allocated to other cost objectives, and costs shall not be subsequently allocated to it. However, a cross allocation of costs between two or more indirect costs categories could be used if such allocation will result in a more equitable allocation of costs. If a cross allocation is used, an appropriate modification to the composition of the indirect cost categories is required.

e. Application of indirect cost rate or rates. Except where a special indirect cost rate(s) is required in accordance with subparagraph D.5 of this appendix, the separate groupings of indirect costs allocated to each major function shall be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The costs in the common pool shall then be distributed to individual awards included in that function by use of a single indirect cost rate.

f. Distribution basis. Indirect costs shall be distributed to applicable sponsored awards and other benefiting activities within each major function on the basis of MTDC. MTDC consists of all salaries and wages, fringe benefits, materials and supplies, services, travel, and subgrants and subcontracts up to the first \$25,000 of each subgrant or subcontract (regardless of the period covered by the subgrant or subcontract). Equipment, capital expenditures, charges for patient care, rental costs and the portion in excess of \$25,000 shall be excluded from MTDC. Participant support costs shall generally be excluded from MTDC. Other items may only be excluded when the Federal cost cognizant agency determines that an exclusion is necessary to avoid a serious inequity in the distribution of indirect costs.

g. Individual Rate Components. An indirect cost rate shall be determined for each separate indirect cost pool developed. The rate in each case shall be stated as the percentage which the amount of the particular indirect cost pool is of the distribution base identified with that pool. Each indirect cost rate negotiation or determination agreement shall include development of the rate for each indirect cost pool as well as the overall indirect cost rate. The indirect cost pools shall be classified within two broad categories: "Facilities" and "Administration," as described in subparagraph C.3 of this appendix.

4. Direct allocation method. a. Some non-profit organizations treat all costs as direct costs except general administration and general expenses. These organizations generally separate their costs into three basic categories: General administration and general expenses, fundraising, and other direct functions (including projects performed under Federal awards). Joint costs, such as depreciation, rental costs, operation and maintenance of facilities, telephone expenses, and the like are prorated individually as direct costs to each category and to each award or other activity using a base most appropriate to the particular cost being prorated.

b. This method is acceptable, provided each joint cost is prorated using a base which

accurately measures the benefits provided to each award or other activity. The bases must be established in accordance with reasonable criteria, and be supported by current data. This method is compatible with the Standards of Accounting and Financial Reporting for Voluntary Health and Welfare Organizations issued jointly by the National Health Council, Inc., the National Assembly of Voluntary Health and Social Welfare Organizations, and the United Way of America.

c. Under this method, indirect costs consist exclusively of general administration and general expenses. In all other respects, the organization's indirect cost rates shall be computed in the same manner as that described in subparagraph D.2 of this appendix.

5. Special indirect cost rates. In some instances, a single indirect cost rate for all activities of an organization or for each major function of the organization may not be appropriate, since it would not take into account those different factors which may substantially affect the indirect costs applicable to a particular segment of work. For this purpose, a particular segment of work may be that performed under a single award or it may consist of work under a group of awards performed in a common environment. These factors may include the physical location of the work, the level of administrative support required, the nature of the facilities or other resources employed, the scientific disciplines or technical skills involved, the organizational arrangements used, or any combination thereof. When a particular segment of work is performed in an environment which appears to generate a significantly different level of indirect costs, provisions should be made for a separate indirect cost pool applicable to such work. The separate indirect cost pool should be developed during the course of the regular allocation process, and the separate indirect cost rate resulting therefrom should be used, provided it is determined that the rate differs significantly from that which would have been obtained under subparagraphs D.2, 3, and 4 of this appendix, and the volume of work to which the rate would apply is material.

E. Negotiation and Approval of Indirect Cost Rates

1. Definitions. As used in this section, the following terms have the meanings set forth below:

a. Cognizant agency means the Federal agency responsible for negotiating and approving indirect cost rates for a non-profit organization on behalf of all Federal agencies.

b. Predetermined rate means an indirect cost rate, applicable to a specified current or future period, usually the organization's fiscal year. The rate is based on an estimate of the costs to be incurred during the period. A predetermined rate is not subject to adjustment.

c. Fixed rate means an indirect cost rate which has the same characteristics as a predetermined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and the actual costs of the period covered by the rate is

carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of a subsequent period.

d. Final rate means an indirect cost rate applicable to a specified past period which is based on the actual costs of the period. A final rate is not subject to adjustment.

e. Provisional rate or billing rate means a temporary indirect cost rate applicable to a specified period which is used for funding, interim reimbursement, and reporting indirect costs on awards pending the establishment of a final rate for the period.

f. Indirect cost proposal means the documentation prepared by an organization to substantiate its claim for the reimbursement of indirect costs. This proposal provides the basis for the review and negotiation leading to the establishment of an organization's indirect cost rate.

g. Cost objective means a function, organizational subdivision, contract, grant, or other work unit for which cost data are desired and for which provision is made to accumulate and measure the cost of processes, projects, jobs and capitalized projects.

2. Negotiation and approval of rates. a. Unless different arrangements are agreed to by the agencies concerned, the Federal agency with the largest dollar value of awards with an organization will be designated as the cognizant agency for the negotiation and approval of the indirect cost rates and, where necessary, other rates such as fringe benefit and computer charge-out rates. Once an agency is assigned cognizance for a particular non-profit organization, the assignment will not be changed unless there is a major long-term shift in the dollar volume of the Federal awards to the organization. All concerned Federal agencies shall be given the opportunity to participate in the negotiation process but, after a rate has been agreed upon, it will be accepted by all Federal agencies. When a Federal agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its awards necessitate special indirect cost rates in accordance with subparagraph D.5 of this appendix, it will, prior to the time the rates are negotiated, notify the cognizant agency.

b. A non-profit organization which has not previously established an indirect cost rate with a Federal agency shall submit its initial indirect cost proposal immediately after the organization is advised that an award will be made and, in no event, later than three months after the effective date of the award.

c. Organizations that have previously established indirect cost rates must submit a new indirect cost proposal to the cognizant agency within six months after the close of each fiscal year.

d. A predetermined rate may be negotiated for use on awards where there is reasonable assurance, based on past experience and reliable projection of the organization's costs, that the rate is not likely to exceed a rate based on the organization's actual costs.

e. Fixed rates may be negotiated where predetermined rates are not considered appropriate. A fixed rate, however, shall not be negotiated if all or a substantial portion of the organization's awards are expected to expire before the carry-forward adjustment can be made; the mix of Federal and non-

Federal work at the organization is too erratic to permit an equitable carry-forward adjustment; or the organization's operations fluctuate significantly from year to year.

f. Provisional and final rates shall be negotiated where neither predetermined nor fixed rates are appropriate.

g. The results of each negotiation shall be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency and the non-profit organization. The cognizant agency shall distribute copies of the agreement to all concerned Federal agencies.

h. If a dispute arises in a negotiation of an indirect cost rate between the cognizant agency and the non-profit organization, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency.

i. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance as required to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

Appendix B to Part 230—Selected Items of Cost

Selected Items of Cost

Table of Contents

1. Advertising and public relations costs
2. Advisory councils
3. Alcoholic beverages
4. Audit costs and related services
5. Bad debts
6. Bonding costs
7. Communication costs
8. Compensation for personal services
9. Contingency provisions
10. Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringement
11. Depreciation and use allowances
12. Donations and contributions
13. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs
14. Entertainment costs
15. Equipment and other capital expenditures
16. Fines and penalties
17. Fund raising and investment management costs
18. Gains and losses on depreciable assets
19. Goods or services for personal use
20. Housing and personal living expenses
21. Idle facilities and idle capacity
22. Insurance and indemnification
23. Interest
24. Labor relations costs
25. Lobbying
26. Losses on other sponsored agreements or contracts
27. Maintenance and repair costs
28. Materials and supplies costs
29. Meetings and conferences
30. Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs
31. Organization costs
32. Page charges in professional journals
33. Participant support costs
34. Patent costs
35. Plant and homeland security costs
36. Pre-agreement costs
37. Professional services costs
38. Publication and printing costs

39. Rearrangement and alteration costs
40. Reconversion costs
41. Recruiting costs
42. Relocation costs
43. Rental costs of buildings and equipment
44. Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights
45. Selling and marketing
46. Specialized service facilities
47. Taxes
48. Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements
49. Training costs
50. Transportation costs
51. Travel costs
52. Trustees

Appendix B to Part 230—Selected Items of Cost

Paragraphs 1 through 52 of this appendix provide principles to be applied in establishing the allowability of certain items of cost. These principles apply whether a cost is treated as direct or indirect. Failure to mention a particular item of cost is not intended to imply that it is unallowable; rather, determination as to allowability in each case should be based on the treatment or principles provided for similar or related items of cost.

1. Advertising and public relations costs. a. The term advertising costs means the costs of advertising media and corollary administrative costs. Advertising media include magazines, newspapers, radio and television, direct mail, exhibits, electronic or computer transmittals, and the like.

b. The term public relations includes community relations and means those activities dedicated to maintaining the image of the non-profit organization or maintaining or promoting understanding and favorable relations with the community or public at large or any segment of the public.

c. The only allowable advertising costs are those which are solely for:

(1) The recruitment of personnel required for the performance by the non-profit organization of obligations arising under a Federal award (See also paragraph 41, Recruiting costs, and paragraph 42, Relocation costs, of this appendix);

(2) The procurement of goods and services for the performance of a Federal award;

(3) The disposal of scrap or surplus materials acquired in the performance of a Federal award except when non-profit organizations are reimbursed for disposal costs at a predetermined amount; or

(4) Other specific purposes necessary to meet the requirements of the Federal award.

d. The only allowable public relations costs are:

(1) Costs specifically required by the Federal award;

(2) Costs of communicating with the public and press pertaining to specific activities or accomplishments which result from performance of Federal awards (these costs are considered necessary as part of the outreach effort for the Federal award); or

(3) Costs of conducting general liaison with news media and government public relations officers, to the extent that such activities are limited to communication and liaison

necessary keep the public informed on matters of public concern, such as notices of Federal contract/grant awards, financial matters, etc.

e. Costs identified in subparagraphs c and d if incurred for more than one Federal award or for both sponsored work and other work of the non-profit organization, are allowable to the extent that the principles in Appendix A to this part, paragraphs B. ("Direct Costs") and C. ("Indirect Costs") are observed.

f. Unallowable advertising and public relations costs include the following:

(1) All advertising and public relations costs other than as specified in subparagraphs c, d, and e;

(2) Costs of meetings, conventions, convocations, or other events related to other activities of the non-profit organization, including:

(a) Costs of displays, demonstrations, and exhibits;

(b) Costs of meeting rooms, hospitality suites, and other special facilities used in conjunction with shows and other special events; and

(c) Salaries and wages of employees engaged in setting up and displaying exhibits, making demonstrations, and providing briefings;

(3) Costs of promotional items and memorabilia, including models, gifts, and souvenirs;

(4) Costs of advertising and public relations designed solely to promote the non-profit organization.

2. Advisory Councils. Costs incurred by advisory councils or committees are allowable as a direct cost where authorized by the Federal awarding agency or as an indirect cost where allocable to Federal awards.

3. Alcoholic beverages. Costs of alcoholic beverages are unallowable.

4. Audit costs and related services. a. The costs of audits required by, and performed in accordance with, the Single Audit Act, as implemented by Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations" are allowable. Also see 31 U.S.C. 7505(b) and section 230 ("Audit Costs") of Circular A-133.

b. Other audit costs are allowable if included in an indirect cost rate proposal, or if specifically approved by the awarding agency as a direct cost to an award.

c. The cost of agreed-upon procedures engagements to monitor subrecipients who are exempted from A-133 under section 200(d) are allowable, subject to the conditions listed in A-133, section 230 (b)(2).

5. Bad debts. Bad debts, including losses (whether actual or estimated) arising from uncollectable accounts and other claims, related collection costs, and related legal costs, are unallowable.

6. Bonding costs. a. Bonding costs arise when the Federal Government requires assurance against financial loss to itself or others by reason of the act or default of the non-profit organization. They arise also in instances where the non-profit organization requires similar assurance. Included are such bonds as bid, performance, payment, advance payment, infringement, and fidelity bonds.

b. Costs of bonding required pursuant to the terms of the award are allowable.

c. Costs of bonding required by the non-profit organization in the general conduct of its operations are allowable to the extent that such bonding is in accordance with sound business practice and the rates and premiums are reasonable under the circumstances.

7. Communication costs. Costs incurred for telephone services, local and long distance telephone calls, telegrams, postage, messenger, electronic or computer transmittal services and the like are allowable.

8. Compensation for personal services. a. Definition. Compensation for personal services includes all compensation paid currently or accrued by the organization for services of employees rendered during the period of the award (except as otherwise provided in subparagraph 8.h of this appendix). It includes, but is not limited to, salaries, wages, director's and executive committee member's fees, incentive awards, fringe benefits, pension plan costs, allowances for off-site pay, incentive pay, location allowances, hardship pay, and cost of living differentials.

b. Allowability. Except as otherwise specifically provided in this paragraph, the costs of such compensation are allowable to the extent that:

(1) Total compensation to individual employees is reasonable for the services rendered and conforms to the established policy of the organization consistently applied to both Federal and non-Federal activities; and

(2) Charges to awards whether treated as direct or indirect costs are determined and supported as required in this paragraph.

c. Reasonableness. (1) When the organization is predominantly engaged in activities other than those sponsored by the Federal Government, compensation for employees on federally-sponsored work will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is consistent with that paid for similar work in the organization's other activities.

(2) When the organization is predominantly engaged in federally-sponsored activities and in cases where the kind of employees required for the Federal activities are not found in the organization's other activities, compensation for employees on federally-sponsored work will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is comparable to that paid for similar work in the labor markets in which the organization competes for the kind of employees involved.

d. Special considerations in determining allowability. Certain conditions require special consideration and possible limitations in determining costs under Federal awards where amounts or types of compensation appear unreasonable. Among such conditions are the following:

(1) Compensation to members of non-profit organizations, trustees, directors, associates, officers, or the immediate families thereof. Determination should be made that such compensation is reasonable for the actual personal services rendered rather than a distribution of earnings in excess of costs.

(2) Any change in an organization's compensation policy resulting in a

substantial increase in the organization's level of compensation, particularly when it was concurrent with an increase in the ratio of Federal awards to other activities of the organization or any change in the treatment of allowability of specific types of compensation due to changes in Federal policy.

e. Unallowable costs. Costs which are unallowable under other paragraphs of this appendix shall not be allowable under this paragraph solely on the basis that they constitute personal compensation.

f. Overtime, extra-pay shift, and multi-shift premiums. Premiums for overtime, extra-pay shifts, and multi-shift work are allowable only with the prior approval of the awarding agency except:

(1) When necessary to cope with emergencies, such as those resulting from accidents, natural disasters, breakdowns of equipment, or occasional operational bottlenecks of a sporadic nature.

(2) When employees are performing indirect functions, such as administration, maintenance, or accounting.

(3) In the performance of tests, laboratory procedures, or other similar operations which are continuous in nature and cannot reasonably be interrupted or otherwise completed.

(4) When lower overall cost to the Federal Government will result.

g. Fringe benefits. (1) Fringe benefits in the form of regular compensation paid to employees during periods of authorized absences from the job, such as vacation leave, sick leave, military leave, and the like, are allowable, provided such costs are absorbed by all organization activities in proportion to the relative amount of time or effort actually devoted to each.

(2) Fringe benefits in the form of employer contributions or expenses for social security, employee insurance, workmen's compensation insurance, pension plan costs (see subparagraph 8.h of this appendix), and the like, are allowable, provided such benefits are granted in accordance with established written organization policies. Such benefits whether treated as indirect costs or as direct costs, shall be distributed to particular awards and other activities in a manner consistent with the pattern of benefits accruing to the individuals or group of employees whose salaries and wages are chargeable to such awards and other activities.

(3)(a) Provisions for a reserve under a self-insurance program for unemployment compensation or workers' compensation are allowable to the extent that the provisions represent reasonable estimates of the liabilities for such compensation, and the types of coverage, extent of coverage, and rates and premiums would have been allowable had insurance been purchased to cover the risks. However, provisions for self-insured liabilities which do not become payable for more than one year after the provision is made shall not exceed the present value of the liability.

(b) Where an organization follows a consistent policy of expensing actual payments to, or on behalf of, employees or former employees for unemployment

compensation or workers' compensation, such payments are allowable in the year of payment with the prior approval of the awarding agency, provided they are allocated to all activities of the organization.

(4) Costs of insurance on the lives of trustees, officers, or other employees holding positions of similar responsibility are allowable only to the extent that the insurance represents additional compensation. The costs of such insurance when the organization is named as beneficiary are unallowable.

h. Organization-furnished automobiles. That portion of the cost of organization-furnished automobiles that relates to personal use by employees (including transportation to and from work) is unallowable as fringe benefit or indirect costs regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees. These costs are allowable as direct costs to sponsored award when necessary for the performance of the sponsored award and approved by awarding agencies.

i. Pension plan costs. (1) Costs of the organization's pension plan which are incurred in accordance with the established policies of the organization are allowable, provided:

(a) Such policies meet the test of reasonableness;

(b) The methods of cost allocation are not discriminatory;

(c) The cost assigned to each fiscal year is determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), as prescribed in Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 8 issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants; and

(d) The costs assigned to a given fiscal year are funded for all plan participants within six months after the end of that year. However, increases to normal and past service pension costs caused by a delay in funding the actuarial liability beyond 30 days after each quarter of the year to which such costs are assignable are unallowable.

(2) Pension plan termination insurance premiums paid pursuant to the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (ERISA) of 1974 (Pub. L. 93-406) are allowable. Late payment charges on such premiums are unallowable.

(3) Excise taxes on accumulated funding deficiencies and other penalties imposed under ERISA are unallowable.

j. Incentive compensation. Incentive compensation to employees based on cost reduction, or efficient performance, suggestion awards, safety awards, etc., are allowable to the extent that the overall compensation is determined to be reasonable and such costs are paid or accrued pursuant to an agreement entered into in good faith between the organization and the employees before the services were rendered, or pursuant to an established plan followed by the organization so consistently as to imply, in effect, an agreement to make such payment.

k. Severance pay. (1) Severance pay, also commonly referred to as dismissal wages, is a payment in addition to regular salaries and wages, by organizations to workers whose employment is being terminated. Costs of

severance pay are allowable only to the extent that in each case, it is required by:

(a) Law

(b) Employer-employee agreement

(c) Established policy that constitutes, in effect, an implied agreement on the organization's part, or

(d) Circumstances of the particular employment.

(2) Costs of severance payments are divided into two categories as follows:

(a) Actual normal turnover severance payments shall be allocated to all activities; or, where the organization provides for a reserve for normal severances, such method will be acceptable if the charge to current operations is reasonable in light of payments actually made for normal severances over a representative past period, and if amounts charged are allocated to all activities of the organization.

(b) Abnormal or mass severance pay is of such a conjectural nature that measurement of costs by means of an accrual will not achieve equity to both parties. Thus, accruals for this purpose are not allowable. However, the Federal Government recognizes its obligation to participate, to the extent of its fair share, in any specific payment. Thus, allowability will be considered on a case-by-case basis in the event or occurrence.

(c) Costs incurred in certain severance pay packages (commonly known as "a golden parachute" payment) which are in an amount in excess of the normal severance pay paid by the organization to an employee upon termination of employment and are paid to the employee contingent upon a change in management control over, or ownership of, the organization's assets are unallowable.

(d) Severance payments to foreign nationals employed by the organization outside the United States, to the extent that the amount exceeds the customary or prevailing practices for the organization in the United States are unallowable, unless they are necessary for the performance of Federal programs and approved by awarding agencies.

(e) Severance payments to foreign nationals employed by the organization outside the United States due to the termination of the foreign national as a result of the closing of, or curtailment of activities by, the organization in that country, are unallowable, unless they are necessary for the performance of Federal programs and approved by awarding agencies.

l. Training costs. See paragraph 49 of this appendix.

m. Support of salaries and wages.

(1) Charges to awards for salaries and wages, whether treated as direct costs or indirect costs, will be based on documented payrolls approved by a responsible official(s) of the organization. The distribution of salaries and wages to awards must be supported by personnel activity reports, as prescribed in subparagraph 8.m.(2) of this appendix, except when a substitute system has been approved in writing by the cognizant agency. (See subparagraph E.2 of Appendix A to this part.)

(2) Reports reflecting the distribution of activity of each employee must be maintained for all staff members

(professionals and nonprofessionals) whose compensation is charged, in whole or in part, directly to awards. In addition, in order to support the allocation of indirect costs, such reports must also be maintained for other employees whose work involves two or more functions or activities if a distribution of their compensation between such functions or activities is needed in the determination of the organization's indirect cost rate(s) (e.g., an employee engaged part-time in indirect cost activities and part-time in a direct function). Reports maintained by non-profit organizations to satisfy these requirements must meet the following standards:

(a) The reports must reflect an after-the-fact determination of the actual activity of each employee. Budget estimates (i.e., estimates determined before the services are performed) do not qualify as support for charges to awards.

(b) Each report must account for the total activity for which employees are compensated and which is required in fulfillment of their obligations to the organization.

(c) The reports must be signed by the individual employee, or by a responsible supervisory official having first hand knowledge of the activities performed by the employee, that the distribution of activity represents a reasonable estimate of the actual work performed by the employee during the periods covered by the reports.

(d) The reports must be prepared at least monthly and must coincide with one or more pay periods.

(3) Charges for the salaries and wages of nonprofessional employees, in addition to the supporting documentation described in subparagraphs (1) and (2), must also be supported by records indicating the total number of hours worked each day maintained in conformance with Department of Labor regulations implementing the Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA) (29 CFR part 516). For this purpose, the term "nonprofessional employee" shall have the same meaning as "nonexempt employee," under FLSA.

(4) Salaries and wages of employees used in meeting cost sharing or matching requirements on awards must be supported in the same manner as salaries and wages claimed for reimbursement from awarding agencies.

9. Contingency provisions. Contributions to a contingency reserve or any similar provision made for events the occurrence of which cannot be foretold with certainty as to time, intensity, or with an assurance of their happening, are unallowable. The term "contingency reserve" excludes self-insurance reserves (see Appendix B to this part, paragraphs 8.g.(3) and 22.a(2)(d)); pension funds (see paragraph 8.i.); and reserves for normal severance pay (see paragraph 8.k.)

10. Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringement.

a. Definitions. (1) Conviction, as used herein, means a judgment or a conviction of a criminal offense by any court of competent jurisdiction, whether entered upon as a verdict or a plea, including a conviction due to a plea of nolo contendere.

(2) Costs include, but are not limited to, administrative and clerical expenses; the cost of legal services, whether performed by in-house or private counsel; and the costs of the services of accountants, consultants, or others retained by the organization to assist it; costs of employees, officers and trustees, and any similar costs incurred before, during, and after commencement of a judicial or administrative proceeding that bears a direct relationship to the proceedings.

(3) Fraud, as used herein, means acts of fraud corruption or attempts to defraud the Federal Government or to corrupt its agents, acts that constitute a cause for debarment or suspension (as specified in agency regulations), and acts which violate the False Claims Act, 31 U.S.C., sections 3729–3731, or the Anti-Kickback Act, 41 U.S.C., sections 51 and 54.

(4) Penalty does not include restitution, reimbursement, or compensatory damages.

(5) Proceeding includes an investigation.

b. (1) Except as otherwise described herein, costs incurred in connection with any criminal, civil or administrative proceeding (including filing of a false certification) commenced by the Federal Government, or a State, local or foreign government, are not allowable if the proceeding: Relates to a violation of, or failure to comply with, a Federal, State, local or foreign statute or regulation by the organization (including its agents and employees), and results in any of the following dispositions:

(a) In a criminal proceeding, a conviction.

(b) In a civil or administrative proceeding involving an allegation of fraud or similar misconduct, a determination of organizational liability.

(c) In the case of any civil or administrative proceeding, the imposition of a monetary penalty.

(d) A final decision by an appropriate Federal official to debar or suspend the organization, to rescind or void an award, or to terminate an award for default by reason of a violation or failure to comply with a law or regulation.

(e) A disposition by consent or compromise, if the action could have resulted in any of the dispositions described in subparagraphs 10.b.(1)(a), (b), (c) or (d) of this appendix.

(2) If more than one proceeding involves the same alleged misconduct, the costs of all such proceedings shall be unallowable if any one of them results in one of the dispositions shown in subparagraph 10.b.(1) of this appendix.

c. If a proceeding referred to in subparagraph 10.b of this appendix is commenced by the Federal Government and is resolved by consent or compromise pursuant to an agreement entered into by the organization and the Federal Government, then the costs incurred by the organization in connection with such proceedings that are otherwise not allowable under subparagraph 10.b of this appendix may be allowed to the extent specifically provided in such agreement.

d. If a proceeding referred to in subparagraph 10.b of this appendix is commenced by a State, local or foreign government, the authorized Federal official

may allow the costs incurred by the organization for such proceedings, if such authorized official determines that the costs were incurred as a result of a specific term or condition of a federally-sponsored award, or specific written direction of an authorized official of the sponsoring agency.

e. Costs incurred in connection with proceedings described in subparagraph 10.b of this appendix, but which are not made unallowable by that subparagraph, may be allowed by the Federal Government, but only to the extent that:

(1) The costs are reasonable in relation to the activities required to deal with the proceeding and the underlying cause of action;

(2) Payment of the costs incurred, as allowable and allocable costs, is not prohibited by any other provision(s) of the sponsored award;

(3) The costs are not otherwise recovered from the Federal Government or a third party, either directly as a result of the proceeding or otherwise; and,

(4) The percentage of costs allowed does not exceed the percentage determined by an authorized Federal official to be appropriate, considering the complexity of the litigation, generally accepted principles governing the award of legal fees in civil actions involving the United States as a party, and such other factors as may be appropriate. Such percentage shall not exceed 80 percent. However, if an agreement reached under subparagraph 10.c of this appendix has explicitly considered this 80 percent limitation and permitted a higher percentage, then the full amount of costs resulting from that agreement shall be allowable.

f. Costs incurred by the organization in connection with the defense of suits brought by its employees or ex-employees under section 2 of the Major Fraud Act of 1988 (Pub. L. 100–700), including the cost of all relief necessary to make such employee whole, where the organization was found liable or settled, are unallowable.

g. Costs of legal, accounting, and consultant services, and related costs, incurred in connection with defense against Federal Government claims or appeals, antitrust suits, or the prosecution of claims or appeals against the Federal Government, are unallowable.

h. Costs of legal, accounting, and consultant services, and related costs, incurred in connection with patent infringement litigation, are unallowable unless otherwise provided for in the sponsored awards.

i. Costs which may be unallowable under this paragraph, including directly associated costs, shall be segregated and accounted for by the organization separately. During the pendency of any proceeding covered by subparagraphs 10.b and f of this appendix, the Federal Government shall generally withhold payment of such costs. However, if in the best interests of the Federal Government, the Federal Government may provide for conditional payment upon provision of adequate security, or other adequate assurance, and agreements by the organization to repay all unallowable costs, plus interest, if the costs are subsequently determined to be unallowable.

11. Depreciation and use allowances. a. Compensation for the use of buildings, other capital improvements, and equipment on hand may be made through use allowance or depreciation. However, except as provided in paragraph 11.f of this appendix, a combination of the two methods may not be used in connection with a single class of fixed assets (e.g., buildings, office equipment, computer equipment, etc.).

b. The computation of use allowances or depreciation shall be based on the acquisition cost of the assets involved. The acquisition cost of an asset donated to the non-profit organization by a third party shall be its fair market value at the time of the donation.

c. The computation of use allowances or depreciation will exclude:

(1) The cost of land;

(2) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment borne by or donated by the Federal Government irrespective of where title was originally vested or where it presently resides; and

(3) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment contributed by or for the non-profit organization in satisfaction of a statutory matching requirement.

d. General criteria where depreciation method is followed:

(1) The period of useful service (useful life) established in each case for usable capital assets must take into consideration such factors as type of construction, nature of the equipment used, technological developments in the particular program area, and the renewal and replacement policies followed for the individual items or classes of assets involved. The method of depreciation used to assign the cost of an asset (or group of assets) to accounting periods shall reflect the pattern of consumption of the asset during its useful life.

(2) In the absence of clear evidence indicating that the expected consumption of the asset will be significantly greater or lesser in the early portions of its useful life than in the later portions, the straight-line method shall be presumed to be the appropriate method.

(3) Depreciation methods once used shall not be changed unless approved in advance by the cognizant Federal agency. When the depreciation method is introduced for application to assets previously subject to a use allowance, the combination of use allowances and depreciation applicable to such assets must not exceed the total acquisition cost of the assets.

e. When the depreciation method is used for buildings, a building's shell may be segregated from each building component (e.g., plumbing system, heating, and air conditioning system, etc.) and each item depreciated over its estimated useful life; or the entire building (i.e., the shell and all components) may be treated as a single asset and depreciated over a single useful life.

f. When the depreciation method is used for a particular class of assets, no depreciation may be allowed on any such assets that, under subparagraph 11.d of this appendix, would be viewed as fully depreciated. However, a reasonable use allowance may be negotiated for such assets

if warranted after taking into consideration the amount of depreciation previously charged to the Federal Government, the estimated useful life remaining at time of negotiation, the effect of any increased maintenance charges or decreased efficiency due to age, and any other factors pertinent to the utilization of the asset for the purpose contemplated.

g. Criteria where the use allowance method is followed:

(1) The use allowance for buildings and improvement (including land improvements, such as paved parking areas, fences, and sidewalks) will be computed at an annual rate not exceeding two percent of acquisition cost.

(2) The use allowance for equipment will be computed at an annual rate not exceeding six and two-thirds percent of acquisition cost. When the use allowance method is used for buildings, the entire building must be treated as a single asset; the building's components (e.g., plumbing system, heating and air conditioning, etc.) cannot be segregated from the building's shell.

(3) The two percent limitation, however, need not be applied to equipment which is merely attached or fastened to the building but not permanently fixed to it and which is used as furnishings or decorations or for specialized purposes (e.g., dentist chairs and dental treatment units, counters, laboratory benches bolted to the floor, dishwashers, modular furniture, carpeting, etc.). Such equipment will be considered as not being permanently fixed to the building if it can be removed without the need for costly or extensive alterations or repairs to the building or the equipment. Equipment that meets these criteria will be subject to the 6% percent equipment use allowance limitation.

h. Charges for use allowances or depreciation must be supported by adequate property records and physical inventories must be taken at least once every two years (a statistical sampling basis is acceptable) to ensure that assets exist and are usable and needed. When the depreciation method is followed, adequate depreciation records indicating the amount of depreciation taken each period must also be maintained.

12. Donations and contributions.

a. Contributions or donations rendered. Contributions or donations, including cash, property, and services, made by the organization, regardless of the recipient, are unallowable.

b. Donated services received:

(1) Donated or volunteer services may be furnished to an organization by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor. The value of these services is not reimbursable either as a direct or indirect cost. However, the value of donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements in accordance with the Common Rule.

(2) The value of donated services utilized in the performance of a direct cost activity shall, when material in amount, be considered in the determination of the non-profit organization's indirect costs or rate(s) and, accordingly, shall be allocated a proportionate share of applicable indirect costs when the following exist:

(a) The aggregate value of the services is material;

(b) The services are supported by a significant amount of the indirect costs incurred by the non-profit organization; and

(c) The direct cost activity is not pursued primarily for the benefit of the Federal Government.

(3) In those instances where there is no basis for determining the fair market value of the services rendered, the recipient and the cognizant agency shall negotiate an appropriate allocation of indirect cost to the services.

(4) Where donated services directly benefit a project supported by an award, the indirect costs allocated to the services will be considered as a part of the total costs of the project. Such indirect costs may be reimbursed under the award or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements.

(5) The value of the donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements under conditions described in Section 215.23 of 2 CFR part 215 (OMB Circular A-110). Where donated services are treated as indirect costs, indirect cost rates will separate the value of the donations so that reimbursement will not be made.

c. Donated goods or space. (1) Donated goods; i.e., expendable personal property/supplies, and donated use of space may be furnished to a non-profit organization. The value of the goods and space is not reimbursable either as a direct or indirect cost.

(2) The value of the donations may be used to meet cost sharing or matching share requirements under the conditions described in 2 CFR part 215 (OMB Circular A-110). Where donations are treated as indirect costs, indirect cost rates will separate the value of the donations so that reimbursement will not be made.

13. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs.

a. The costs of employee information publications, health or first-aid clinics and/or infirmaries, recreational activities, employee counseling services, and any other expenses incurred in accordance with the non-profit organization's established practice or custom for the improvement of working conditions, employer-employee relations, employee morale, and employee performance are allowable.

b. Such costs will be equitably apportioned to all activities of the non-profit organization. Income generated from any of these activities will be credited to the cost thereof unless such income has been irrevocably set over to employee welfare organizations.

14. Entertainment costs. Costs of entertainment, including amusement, diversion, and social activities and any costs directly associated with such costs (such as tickets to shows or sports events, meals, lodging, rentals, transportation, and gratuities) are unallowable.

15. Equipment and other capital expenditures.

a. For purposes of this subparagraph, the following definitions apply:

(1) "Capital Expenditures" means expenditures for the acquisition cost of capital assets (equipment, buildings, land), or

expenditures to make improvements to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life. Acquisition cost means the cost of the asset including the cost to put it in place. Acquisition cost for equipment, for example, means the net invoice price of the equipment, including the cost of any modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make it usable for the purpose for which it is acquired. Ancillary charges, such as taxes, duty, protective in transit insurance, freight, and installation may be included in, or excluded from the acquisition cost in accordance with the non-profit organization's regular accounting practices.

(2) "Equipment" means an article of nonexpendable, tangible personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost which equals or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the non-profit organization for financial statement purposes, or \$5000.

(3) "Special purpose equipment" means equipment which is used only for research, medical, scientific, or other technical activities. Examples of special purpose equipment include microscopes, x-ray machines, surgical instruments, and spectrometers.

(4) "General purpose equipment" means equipment, which is not limited to research, medical, scientific or other technical activities. Examples include office equipment and furnishings, modular offices, telephone networks, information technology equipment and systems, air conditioning equipment, reproduction and printing equipment, and motor vehicles.

b. The following rules of allowability shall apply to equipment and other capital expenditures:

(1) Capital expenditures for general purpose equipment, buildings, and land are unallowable as direct charges, except where approved in advance by the awarding agency.

(2) Capital expenditures for special purpose equipment are allowable as direct costs, provided that items with a unit cost of \$5000 or more have the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(3) Capital expenditures for improvements to land, buildings, or equipment which materially increase their value or useful life are unallowable as a direct cost except with the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(4) When approved as a direct charge pursuant to paragraph 15.b.(1), (2), and (3) above, capital expenditures will be charged in the period in which the expenditure is incurred, or as otherwise determined appropriate by and negotiated with the awarding agency.

(5) Equipment and other capital expenditures are unallowable as indirect costs. However, see paragraph 11., Depreciation and use allowance, of this appendix for rules on the allowability of use allowances or depreciation on buildings, capital improvements, and equipment. Also, see paragraph 43., Rental costs of buildings and equipment, of this appendix for rules on the allowability of rental costs for land, buildings, and equipment.

(6) The unamortized portion of any equipment written off as a result of a change

in capitalization levels may be recovered by continuing to claim the otherwise allowable use allowances or depreciation on the equipment, or by amortizing the amount to be written off over a period of years negotiated with the cognizant agency.

16. Fines and penalties. Costs of fines and penalties resulting from violations of, or failure of the organization to comply with Federal, State, and local laws and regulations are unallowable except when incurred as a result of compliance with specific provisions of an award or instructions in writing from the awarding agency.

17. Fund raising and investment management costs. a. Costs of organized fund raising, including financial campaigns, endowment drives, solicitation of gifts and bequests, and similar expenses incurred solely to raise capital or obtain contributions are unallowable.

b. Costs of investment counsel and staff and similar expenses incurred solely to enhance income from investments are unallowable.

c. Fund raising and investment activities shall be allocated an appropriate share of indirect costs under the conditions described in subparagraph B.3 of Appendix A to this part.

18. Gains and losses on depreciable assets. a. (1) Gains and losses on sale, retirement, or other disposition of depreciable property shall be included in the year in which they occur as credits or charges to cost grouping(s) in which the depreciation applicable to such property was included. The amount of the gain or loss to be included as a credit or charge to the appropriate cost grouping(s) shall be the difference between the amount realized on the property and the undepreciated basis of the property.

(2) Gains and losses on the disposition of depreciable property shall not be recognized as a separate credit or charge under the following conditions:

(a) The gain or loss is processed through a depreciation account and is reflected in the depreciation allowable under paragraph 11 of this appendix.

(b) The property is given in exchange as part of the purchase price of a similar item and the gain or loss is taken into account in determining the depreciation cost basis of the new item.

(c) A loss results from the failure to maintain permissible insurance, except as otherwise provided in paragraph 22 of this appendix.

(d) Compensation for the use of the property was provided through use allowances in lieu of depreciation in accordance with paragraph 9 of this appendix.

(e) Gains and losses arising from mass or extraordinary sales, retirements, or other dispositions shall be considered on a case-by-case basis.

b. Gains or losses of any nature arising from the sale or exchange of property other than the property covered in subparagraph a shall be excluded in computing award costs.

19. Goods or services for personal use. Costs of goods or services for personal use of the organization's employees are unallowable regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

20. Housing and personal living expenses. a. Costs of housing (e.g., depreciation, maintenance, utilities, furnishings, rent, etc.), housing allowances and personal living expenses for/of the organization's officers are unallowable as fringe benefit or indirect costs regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees. These costs are allowable as direct costs to sponsored award when necessary for the performance of the sponsored award and approved by awarding agencies.

b. The term "officers" includes current and past officers and employees.

21. Idle facilities and idle capacity. a. As used in this section the following terms have the meanings set forth below:

(1) "Facilities" means land and buildings or any portion thereof, equipment individually or collectively, or any other tangible capital asset, wherever located, and whether owned or leased by the non-profit organization.

(2) "Idle facilities" means completely unused facilities that are excess to the non-profit organization's current needs.

(3) "Idle capacity" means the unused capacity of partially used facilities. It is the difference between: That which a facility could achieve under 100 percent operating time on a one-shift basis less operating interruptions resulting from time lost for repairs, setups, unsatisfactory materials, and other normal delays; and the extent to which the facility was actually used to meet demands during the accounting period. A multi-shift basis should be used if it can be shown that this amount of usage would normally be expected for the type of facility involved.

(4) "Cost of idle facilities or idle capacity" means costs such as maintenance, repair, housing, rent, and other related costs, e.g., insurance, interest, property taxes and depreciation or use allowances.

b. The costs of idle facilities are unallowable except to the extent that:

(1) They are necessary to meet fluctuations in workload; or

(2) Although not necessary to meet fluctuations in workload, they were necessary when acquired and are now idle because of changes in program requirements, efforts to achieve more economical operations, reorganization, termination, or other causes which could not have been reasonably foreseen. Under the exception stated in this subparagraph, costs of idle facilities are allowable for a reasonable period of time, ordinarily not to exceed one year, depending on the initiative taken to use, lease, or dispose of such facilities.

c. The costs of idle capacity are normal costs of doing business and are a factor in the normal fluctuations of usage or indirect cost rates from period to period. Such costs are allowable, provided that the capacity is reasonably anticipated to be necessary or was originally reasonable and is not subject to reduction or elimination by use on other Federal awards, subletting, renting, or sale, in accordance with sound business, economic, or security practices. Widespread idle capacity throughout an entire facility or among a group of assets having substantially the same function may be considered idle facilities.

22. Insurance and indemnification. a. Insurance includes insurance which the organization is required to carry, or which is approved, under the terms of the award and any other insurance which the organization maintains in connection with the general conduct of its operations. This paragraph does not apply to insurance which represents fringe benefits for employees (see subparagraphs 8.g and 8.i(2) of this appendix).

(1) Costs of insurance required or approved, and maintained, pursuant to the award are allowable.

(2) Costs of other insurance maintained by the organization in connection with the general conduct of its operations are allowable subject to the following limitations:

(a) Types and extent of coverage shall be in accordance with sound business practice and the rates and premiums shall be reasonable under the circumstances.

(b) Costs allowed for business interruption or other similar insurance shall be limited to exclude coverage of management fees.

(c) Costs of insurance or of any provisions for a reserve covering the risk of loss or damage to Federal property are allowable only to the extent that the organization is liable for such loss or damage.

(d) Provisions for a reserve under a self-insurance program are allowable to the extent that types of coverage, extent of coverage, rates, and premiums would have been allowed had insurance been purchased to cover the risks. However, provision for known or reasonably estimated self-insured liabilities, which do not become payable for more than one year after the provision is made, shall not exceed the present value of the liability.

(e) Costs of insurance on the lives of trustees, officers, or other employees holding positions of similar responsibilities are allowable only to the extent that the insurance represents additional compensation (see subparagraph 8.g(4) of this appendix). The cost of such insurance when the organization is identified as the beneficiary is unallowable.

(f) Insurance against defects. Costs of insurance with respect to any costs incurred to correct defects in the organization's materials or workmanship are unallowable.

(g) Medical liability (malpractice) insurance. Medical liability insurance is an allowable cost of Federal research programs only to the extent that the Federal research programs involve human subjects or training of participants in research techniques. Medical liability insurance costs shall be treated as a direct cost and shall be assigned to individual projects based on the manner in which the insurer allocates the risk to the population covered by the insurance.

(3) Actual losses which could have been covered by permissible insurance (through the purchase of insurance or a self-insurance program) are unallowable unless expressly provided for in the award, except:

(a) Costs incurred because of losses not covered under nominal deductible insurance coverage provided in keeping with sound business practice are allowable.

(b) Minor losses not covered by insurance, such as spoilage, breakage, and

disappearance of supplies, which occur in the ordinary course of operations, are allowable.

b. Indemnification includes securing the organization against liabilities to third persons and any other loss or damage, not compensated by insurance or otherwise. The Federal Government is obligated to indemnify the organization only to the extent expressly provided in the award.

23. Interest. a. Costs incurred for interest on borrowed capital, temporary use of endowment funds, or the use of the non-profit organization's own funds, however represented, are unallowable. However, interest on debt incurred after September 29, 1995 to acquire or replace capital assets (including renovations, alterations, equipment, land, and capital assets acquired through capital leases), acquired after September 29, 1995 and used in support of Federal awards is allowable, provided that:

(1) For facilities acquisitions (excluding renovations and alterations) costing over \$10 million where the Federal Government's reimbursement is expected to equal or exceed 40 percent of an asset's cost, the non-profit organization prepares, prior to the acquisition or replacement of the capital asset(s), a justification that demonstrates the need for the facility in the conduct of federally-sponsored activities. Upon request, the needs justification must be provided to the Federal agency with cost cognizance authority as a prerequisite to the continued allowability of interest on debt and depreciation related to the facility. The needs justification for the acquisition of a facility should include, at a minimum, the following:

(a) A statement of purpose and justification for facility acquisition or replacement.

(b) A statement as to why current facilities are not adequate.

(c) A statement of planned future use of the facility.

(d) A description of the financing agreement to be arranged for the facility.

(e) A summary of the building contract with estimated cost information and statement of source and use of funds.

(f) A schedule of planned occupancy dates.

(2) For facilities costing over \$500,000, the non-profit organization prepares, prior to the acquisition or replacement of the facility, a lease/purchase analysis in accordance with the provisions of §§ 215.30 through 215.37 of 2 CFR 215 (OMB Circular A-110), which shows that a financed purchase or capital lease is less costly to the organization than other leasing alternatives, on a net present value basis. Discount rates used should be equal to the non-profit organization's anticipated interest rates and should be no higher than the fair market rate available to the non-profit organization from an unrelated ("arm's length") third-party. The lease/purchase analysis shall include a comparison of the net present value of the projected total cost comparisons of both alternatives over the period the asset is expected to be used by the non-profit organization. The cost comparisons associated with purchasing the facility shall include the estimated purchase price, anticipated operating and maintenance costs (including property taxes, if applicable) not included in the debt financing, less any

estimated asset salvage value at the end of the period defined above. The cost comparison for a capital lease shall include the estimated total lease payments, any estimated bargain purchase option, operating and maintenance costs, and taxes not included in the capital leasing arrangement, less any estimated credits due under the lease at the end of the period defined above. Projected operating lease costs shall be based on the anticipated cost of leasing comparable facilities at fair market rates under rental agreements that would be renewed or reestablished over the period defined above, and any expected maintenance costs and allowable property taxes to be borne by the non-profit organization directly or as part of the lease arrangement.

(3) The actual interest cost claimed is predicated upon interest rates that are no higher than the fair market rate available to the non-profit organization from an unrelated ("arm's length") third party.

(4) Investment earnings, including interest income, on bond or loan principal, pending payment of the construction or acquisition costs, are used to offset allowable interest cost. Arbitrage earnings reportable to the Internal Revenue Service are not required to be offset against allowable interest costs.

(5) Reimbursements are limited to the least costly alternative based on the total cost analysis required under subparagraph 23.b. of this appendix. For example, if an operating lease is determined to be less costly than purchasing through debt financing, then reimbursement is limited to the amount determined if leasing had been used. In all cases where a lease/purchase analysis is performed, Federal reimbursement shall be based upon the least expensive alternative.

(6) Non-profit organizations are also subject to the following conditions:

(a) Interest on debt incurred to finance or refinance assets acquired before or reacquired after September 29, 1995, is not allowable.

(b) Interest attributable to fully depreciated assets is unallowable.

(c) For debt arrangements over \$1 million, unless the non-profit organization makes an initial equity contribution to the asset purchase of 25 percent or more, non-profit organizations shall reduce claims for interest expense by an amount equal to imputed interest earnings on excess cash flow, which is to be calculated as follows. Annually, non-profit organizations shall prepare a cumulative (from the inception of the project) report of monthly cash flows that includes inflows and outflows, regardless of the funding source. Inflows consist of depreciation expense, amortization of capitalized construction interest, and annual interest expense. For cash flow calculations, the annual inflow figures shall be divided by the number of months in the year (usually 12) that the building is in service for monthly amounts. Outflows consist of initial equity contributions, debt principal payments (less the pro rata share attributable to the unallowable costs of land) and interest payments. Where cumulative inflows exceed cumulative outflows, interest shall be calculated on the excess inflows for that period and be treated as a reduction to allowable interest expense. The rate of

interest to be used to compute earnings on excess cash flows shall be the three month Treasury Bill closing rate as of the last business day of that month.

(d) Substantial relocation of federally-sponsored activities from a facility financed by indebtedness, the cost of which was funded in whole or part through Federal reimbursements, to another facility prior to the expiration of a period of 20 years requires notice to the Federal cognizant agency. The extent of the relocation, the amount of the Federal participation in the financing, and the depreciation and interest charged to date may require negotiation and/or downward adjustments of replacement space charged to Federal programs in the future.

(e) The allowable costs to acquire facilities and equipment are limited to a fair market value available to the non-profit organization from an unrelated ("arm's length") third party.

b. For non-profit organizations subject to "full coverage" under the Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) as defined at 48 CFR 9903.201, the interest allowability provisions of subparagraph a do not apply. Instead, these organizations' sponsored agreements are subject to CAS 414 (48 CFR 9903.414), cost of money as an element of the cost of facilities capital, and CAS 417 (48 CFR 9903.417), cost of money as an element of the cost of capital assets under construction.

c. The following definitions are to be used for purposes of this paragraph:

(1) Re-acquired assets means assets held by the non-profit organization prior to September 29, 1995 that have again come to be held by the organization, whether through repurchase or refinancing. It does not include assets acquired to replace older assets.

(2) Initial equity contribution means the amount or value of contributions made by non-profit organizations for the acquisition of the asset or prior to occupancy of facilities.

(3) Asset costs means the capitalizable costs of an asset, including construction costs, acquisition costs, and other such costs capitalized in accordance with GAAP.

24. Labor relations costs. Costs incurred in maintaining satisfactory relations between the organization and its employees, including costs of labor management committees, employee publications, and other related activities are allowable.

25. Lobbying. a. Notwithstanding other provisions of this appendix, costs associated with the following activities are unallowable:

(1) Attempts to influence the outcomes of any Federal, State, or local election, referendum, initiative, or similar procedure, through in kind or cash contributions, endorsements, publicity, or similar activity;

(2) Establishing, administering, contributing to, or paying the expenses of a political party, campaign, political action committee, or other organization established for the purpose of influencing the outcomes of elections;

(3) Any attempt to influence: The introduction of Federal or State legislation; or the enactment or modification of any pending Federal or State legislation through communication with any member or employee of the Congress or State legislature (including efforts to influence State or local

officials to engage in similar lobbying activity), or with any Government official or employee in connection with a decision to sign or veto enrolled legislation;

(4) Any attempt to influence: The introduction of Federal or State legislation; or the enactment or modification of any pending Federal or State legislation by preparing, distributing or using publicity or propaganda, or by urging members of the general public or any segment thereof to contribute to or participate in any mass demonstration, march, rally, fundraising drive, lobbying campaign or letter writing or telephone campaign; or

(5) Legislative liaison activities, including attendance at legislative sessions or committee hearings, gathering information regarding legislation, and analyzing the effect of legislation, when such activities are carried on in support of or in knowing preparation for an effort to engage in unallowable lobbying.

b. The following activities are excepted from the coverage of subparagraph 25.a of this appendix:

(1) Providing a technical and factual presentation of information on a topic directly related to the performance of a grant, contract or other agreement through hearing testimony, statements or letters to the Congress or a State legislature, or subdivision, member, or cognizant staff member thereof, in response to a documented request (including a Congressional Record notice requesting testimony or statements for the record at a regularly scheduled hearing) made by the recipient member, legislative body or subdivision, or a cognizant staff member thereof; provided such information is readily obtainable and can be readily put in deliverable form; and further provided that costs under this section for travel, lodging or meals are unallowable unless incurred to offer testimony at a regularly scheduled Congressional hearing pursuant to a written request for such presentation made by the Chairman or Ranking Minority Member of the Committee or Subcommittee conducting such hearing.

(2) Any lobbying made unallowable by subparagraph 25.a.(3) of this appendix to influence State legislation in order to directly reduce the cost, or to avoid material impairment of the organization's authority to perform the grant, contract, or other agreement.

(3) Any activity specifically authorized by statute to be undertaken with funds from the grant, contract, or other agreement.

c. (1) When an organization seeks reimbursement for indirect costs, total lobbying costs shall be separately identified in the indirect cost rate proposal, and thereafter treated as other unallowable activity costs in accordance with the procedures of subparagraph B.3 of Appendix A to this part.

(2) Organizations shall submit, as part of the annual indirect cost rate proposal, a certification that the requirements and standards of this paragraph have been complied with.

(3) Organizations shall maintain adequate records to demonstrate that the determination of costs as being allowable or

unallowable pursuant to paragraph 25 complies with the requirements of this Appendix.

(4) Time logs, calendars, or similar records shall not be required to be created for purposes of complying with this paragraph during any particular calendar month when: the employee engages in lobbying (as defined in subparagraphs 25.a. and b. of this appendix) 25 percent or less of the employee's compensated hours of employment during that calendar month, and within the preceding five-year period, the organization has not materially misstated allowable or unallowable costs of any nature, including legislative lobbying costs. When the conditions described in this subparagraph are met, organizations are not required to establish records to support the allowability of claimed costs in addition to records already required or maintained. Also, when the conditions described in this subparagraph are met, the absence of time logs, calendars, or similar records will not serve as a basis for disallowing costs by contesting estimates of lobbying time spent by employees during a calendar month.

(5) Agencies shall establish procedures for resolving in advance, in consultation with OMB, any significant questions or disagreements concerning the interpretation or application of paragraph 25. Any such advance resolution shall be binding in any subsequent settlements, audits or investigations with respect to that grant or contract for purposes of interpretation of this Appendix; provided, however, that this shall not be construed to prevent a contractor or grantee from contesting the lawfulness of such a determination.

d. Executive lobbying costs. Costs incurred in attempting to improperly influence either directly or indirectly, an employee or officer of the Executive Branch of the Federal Government to give consideration or to act regarding a sponsored agreement or a regulatory matter are unallowable. Improper influence means any influence that induces or tends to induce a Federal employee or officer to give consideration or to act regarding a federally-sponsored agreement or regulatory matter on any basis other than the merits of the matter.

26. Losses on other sponsored agreements or contracts. Any excess of costs over income on any award is unallowable as a cost of any other award. This includes, but is not limited to, the organization's contributed portion by reason of cost sharing agreements or any under-recoveries through negotiation of lump sums for, or ceilings on, indirect costs.

27. Maintenance and repair costs. Costs incurred for necessary maintenance, repair, or upkeep of buildings and equipment (including Federal property unless otherwise provided for) which neither add to the permanent value of the property nor appreciably prolong its intended life, but keep it in an efficient operating condition, are allowable. Costs incurred for improvements which add to the permanent value of the buildings and equipment or appreciably prolong their intended life shall be treated as capital expenditures (see paragraph 15 of this appendix).

28. Materials and supplies costs. a. Costs incurred for materials, supplies, and

fabricated parts necessary to carry out a Federal award are allowable.

b. Purchased materials and supplies shall be charged at their actual prices, net of applicable credits. Withdrawals from general stores or stockrooms should be charged at their actual net cost under any recognized method of pricing inventory withdrawals, consistently applied. Incoming transportation charges are a proper part of materials and supplies costs.

c. Only materials and supplies actually used for the performance of a Federal award may be charged as direct costs.

d. Where federally-donated or furnished materials are used in performing the Federal award, such materials will be used without charge.

29. Meetings and conferences. Costs of meetings and conferences, the primary purpose of which is the dissemination of technical information, are allowable. This includes costs of meals, transportation, rental of facilities, speakers' fees, and other items incidental to such meetings or conferences. But see paragraphs 14., Entertainment costs, and 33., Participant support costs of this appendix.

30. Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs. a. Costs of the non-profit organization's membership in business, technical, and professional organizations are allowable.

b. Costs of the non-profit organization's subscriptions to business, professional, and technical periodicals are allowable.

c. Costs of membership in any civic or community organization are allowable with prior approval by Federal cognizant agency.

d. Costs of membership in any country club or social or dining club or organization are unallowable.

31. Organization costs. Expenditures, such as incorporation fees, brokers' fees, fees to promoters, organizers or management consultants, attorneys, accountants, or investment counselors, whether or not employees of the organization, in connection with establishment or reorganization of an organization, are unallowable except with prior approval of the awarding agency.

32. Page charges in professional journals. Page charges for professional journal publications are allowable as a necessary part of research costs, where:

a. The research papers report work supported by the Federal Government; and

b. The charges are levied impartially on all research papers published by the journal, whether or not by federally-sponsored authors.

33. Participant support costs. Participant support costs are direct costs for items such as stipends or subsistence allowances, travel allowances, and registration fees paid to or on behalf of participants or trainees (but not employees) in connection with meetings, conferences, symposia, or training projects. These costs are allowable with the prior approval of the awarding agency.

34. Patent costs. a. The following costs relating to patent and copyright matters are allowable: cost of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents required by the Federal award and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make such disclosures;

cost of preparing documents and any other patent costs in connection with the filing and prosecution of a United States patent application where title or royalty-free license is required by the Federal Government to be conveyed to the Federal Government; and general counseling services relating to patent and copyright matters, such as advice on patent and copyright laws, regulations, clauses, and employee agreements (but see paragraphs 37., Professional services costs, and 44., Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights, of this appendix).

b. The following costs related to patent and copyright matter are unallowable:

(1) Cost of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make disclosures not required by the award.

(2) Costs in connection with filing and prosecuting any foreign patent application, or any United States patent application, where the Federal award does not require conveying title or a royalty-free license to the Federal Government (but see paragraph 45., Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights, of this appendix).

35. Plant and homeland security costs. Necessary and reasonable expenses incurred for routine and homeland security to protect facilities, personnel, and work products are allowable. Such costs include, but are not limited to, wages and uniforms of personnel engaged in security activities; equipment; barriers; contractual security services; consultants; etc. Capital expenditures for homeland and plant security purposes are subject to paragraph 15., Equipment and other capital expenditures, of this appendix.

36. Pre-agreement costs. Pre-award costs are those incurred prior to the effective date of the award directly pursuant to the negotiation and in anticipation of the award where such costs are necessary to comply with the proposed delivery schedule or period of performance. Such costs are allowable only to the extent that they would have been allowable if incurred after the date of the award and only with the written approval of the awarding agency.

37. Professional services costs. a. Costs of professional and consultant services rendered by persons who are members of a particular profession or possess a special skill, and who are not officers or employees of the non-profit organization, are allowable, subject to subparagraphs b and c when reasonable in relation to the services rendered and when not contingent upon recovery of the costs from the Federal Government. In addition, legal and related services are limited under paragraph 10 of this appendix.

b. In determining the allowability of costs in a particular case, no single factor or any special combination of factors is necessarily determinative. However, the following factors are relevant:

(1) The nature and scope of the service rendered in relation to the service required.

(2) The necessity of contracting for the service, considering the non-profit organization's capability in the particular area.

(3) The past pattern of such costs, particularly in the years prior to Federal awards.

(4) The impact of Federal awards on the non-profit organization's business (*i.e.*, what new problems have arisen).

(5) Whether the proportion of Federal work to the non-profit organization's total business is such as to influence the non-profit organization in favor of incurring the cost, particularly where the services rendered are not of a continuing nature and have little relationship to work under Federal grants and contracts.

(6) Whether the service can be performed more economically by direct employment rather than contracting.

(7) The qualifications of the individual or concern rendering the service and the customary fees charged, especially on non-Federal awards.

(8) Adequacy of the contractual agreement for the service (*e.g.*, description of the service, estimate of time required, rate of compensation, and termination provisions).

c. In addition to the factors in subparagraph 37.b of this appendix, retainer fees to be allowable must be supported by evidence of bona fide services available or rendered

38. Publication and printing costs. a. Publication costs include the costs of printing (including the processes of composition, plate-making, press work, binding, and the end products produced by such processes), distribution, promotion, mailing, and general handling. Publication costs also include page charges in professional publications.

b. If these costs are not identifiable with a particular cost objective, they should be allocated as indirect costs to all benefiting activities of the non-profit organization.

c. Page charges for professional journal publications are allowable as a necessary part of research costs where:

(1) The research papers report work supported by the Federal Government; and

(2) The charges are levied impartially on all research papers published by the journal, whether or not by federally-sponsored authors.

39. Rearrangement and alteration costs. Costs incurred for ordinary or normal rearrangement and alteration of facilities are allowable. Special arrangement and alteration costs incurred specifically for the project are allowable with the prior approval of the awarding agency.

40. Reconversion costs. Costs incurred in the restoration or rehabilitation of the non-profit organization's facilities to approximately the same condition existing immediately prior to commencement of Federal awards, less costs related to normal wear and tear, are allowable.

41. Recruiting costs. a. Subject to subparagraphs 41.b, c, and d of this appendix, and provided that the size of the staff recruited and maintained is in keeping with workload requirements, costs of "help wanted" advertising, operating costs of an employment office necessary to secure and maintain an adequate staff, costs of operating an aptitude and educational testing program, travel costs of employees while engaged in recruiting personnel, travel costs of applicants for interviews for prospective employment, and relocation costs incurred

incident to recruitment of new employees, are allowable to the extent that such costs are incurred pursuant to a well-managed recruitment program. Where the organization uses employment agencies, costs that are not in excess of standard commercial rates for such services are allowable.

b. In publications, costs of help wanted advertising that includes color, includes advertising material for other than recruitment purposes, or is excessive in size (taking into consideration recruitment purposes for which intended and normal organizational practices in this respect), are unallowable.

c. Costs of help wanted advertising, special emoluments, fringe benefits, and salary allowances incurred to attract professional personnel from other organizations that do not meet the test of reasonableness or do not conform with the established practices of the organization, are unallowable.

d. Where relocation costs incurred incident to recruitment of a new employee have been allowed either as an allocable direct or indirect cost, and the newly hired employee resigns for reasons within his control within twelve months after being hired, the organization will be required to refund or credit such relocation costs to the Federal Government.

42. Relocation costs. a. Relocation costs are costs incident to the permanent change of duty assignment (for an indefinite period or for a stated period of not less than 12 months) of an existing employee or upon recruitment of a new employee. Relocation costs are allowable, subject to the limitation described in subparagraphs 42.b, c, and d of this appendix, provided that:

(1) The move is for the benefit of the employee.

(2) Reimbursement to the employee is in accordance with an established written policy consistently followed by the employee.

(3) The reimbursement does not exceed the employee's actual (or reasonably estimated) expenses.

b. Allowable relocation costs for current employees are limited to the following:

(1) The costs of transportation of the employee, members of his immediate family and his household, and personal effects to the new location.

(2) The costs of finding a new home, such as advance trips by employees and spouses to locate living quarters and temporary lodging during the transition period, up to maximum period of 30 days, including advance trip time.

(3) Closing costs, such as brokerage, legal, and appraisal fees, incident to the disposition of the employee's former home. These costs, together with those described in subparagraph 42.b.(4) of this appendix, are limited to 8 percent of the sales price of the employee's former home.

(4) The continuing costs of ownership of the vacant former home after the settlement or lease date of the employee's new permanent home, such as maintenance of buildings and grounds (exclusive of fixing up expenses), utilities, taxes, and property insurance.

(5) Other necessary and reasonable expenses normally incident to relocation,

such as the costs of canceling an unexpired lease, disconnecting and reinstalling household appliances, and purchasing insurance against loss of or damages to personal property. The cost of canceling an unexpired lease is limited to three times the monthly rental.

c. Allowable relocation costs for new employees are limited to those described in subparagraph 42.b(1) and (2) of this appendix. When relocation costs incurred incident to the recruitment of new employees have been allowed either as a direct or indirect cost and the employee resigns for reasons within his control within 12 months after hire; the organization shall refund or credit the Federal Government for its share of the cost. However, the costs of travel to an overseas location shall be considered travel costs in accordance with paragraph 50 and not relocation costs for the purpose of this paragraph if dependents are not permitted at the location for any reason and the costs do not include costs of transporting household goods.

d. The following costs related to relocation are unallowable:

- (1) Fees and other costs associated with acquiring a new home.
- (2) A loss on the sale of a former home.
- (3) Continuing mortgage principal and interest payments on a home being sold.
- (4) Income taxes paid by an employee related to reimbursed relocation costs.

43. Rental costs of buildings and equipment. a. Subject to the limitations described in subparagraphs 43.b. through d. of this appendix, rental costs are allowable to the extent that the rates are reasonable in light of such factors as: Rental costs of comparable property, if any; market conditions in the area; alternatives available; and, the type, life expectancy, condition, and value of the property leased. Rental arrangements should be reviewed periodically to determine if circumstances have changed and other options are available.

b. Rental costs under "sale and lease back" arrangements are allowable only up to the amount that would be allowed had the non-profit organization continued to own the property. This amount would include expenses such as depreciation or use allowance, maintenance, taxes, and insurance.

c. Rental costs under "less-than-arms-length" leases are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in subparagraph 43.b. of this appendix) that would be allowed had title to the property vested in the non-profit organization. For this purpose, a less-than-arms-length lease is one under which one party to the lease agreement is able to control or substantially influence the actions of the other. Such leases include, but are not limited to those between divisions of a non-profit organization; non-profit organizations under common control through common officers, directors, or members; and a non-profit organization and a director, trustee, officer, or key employee of the non-profit organization or his immediate family, either directly or through corporations, trusts, or similar arrangements in which they hold a controlling interest. For example, a non-profit organization may establish a separate

corporation for the sole purpose of owning property and leasing it back to the non-profit organization.

d. Rental costs under leases which are required to be treated as capital leases under GAAP are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in subparagraph b) that would be allowed had the non-profit organization purchased the property on the date the lease agreement was executed. The provisions of Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement 13, Accounting for Leases, shall be used to determine whether a lease is a capital lease. Interest costs related to capital leases are allowable to the extent they meet the criteria in paragraph 23 of this appendix. Unallowable costs include amounts paid for profit, management fees, and taxes that would not have been incurred had the non-profit organization purchased the facility.

44. Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights. a. Royalties on a patent or copyright or amortization of the cost of acquiring by purchase a copyright, patent, or rights thereto, necessary for the proper performance of the award are allowable unless:

- (1) The Federal Government has a license or the right to free use of the patent or copyright.
- (2) The patent or copyright has been adjudicated to be invalid, or has been administratively determined to be invalid.
- (3) The patent or copyright is considered to be unenforceable.
- (4) The patent or copyright is expired.

b. Special care should be exercised in determining reasonableness where the royalties may have arrived at as a result of less-than-arms-length bargaining, e.g.:

- (1) Royalties paid to persons, including corporations, affiliated with the non-profit organization.
- (2) Royalties paid to unaffiliated parties, including corporations, under an agreement entered into in contemplation that a Federal award would be made.
- (3) Royalties paid under an agreement entered into after an award is made to a non-profit organization.

c. In any case involving a patent or copyright formerly owned by the non-profit organization, the amount of royalty allowed should not exceed the cost which would have been allowed had the non-profit organization retained title thereto.

45. Selling and marketing. Costs of selling and marketing any products or services of the non-profit organization are unallowable (unless allowed under paragraph 1. of this appendix as allowable public relations cost. However, these costs are allowable as direct costs, with prior approval by awarding agencies, when they are necessary for the performance of Federal programs.

46. Specialized service facilities. a. The costs of services provided by highly complex or specialized facilities operated by the non-profit organization, such as computers, wind tunnels, and reactors are allowable, provided the charges for the services meet the conditions of either paragraph 46 b. or c. of this appendix and, in addition, take into account any items of income or Federal financing that qualify as applicable credits under subparagraph A.5. of Appendix A to this part.

b. The costs of such services, when material, must be charged directly to applicable awards based on actual usage of the services on the basis of a schedule of rates or established methodology that does not discriminate against federally-supported activities of the non-profit organization, including usage by the non-profit organization for internal purposes, and is designed to recover only the aggregate costs of the services. The costs of each service shall consist normally of both its direct costs and its allocable share of all indirect costs. Rates shall be adjusted at least biennially, and shall take into consideration over/under applied costs of the previous period(s).

c. Where the costs incurred for a service are not material, they may be allocated as indirect costs.

d. Under some extraordinary circumstances, where it is in the best interest of the Federal Government and the institution to establish alternative costing arrangements, such arrangements may be worked out with the cognizant Federal agency.

47. Taxes. a. In general, taxes which the organization is required to pay and which are paid or accrued in accordance with GAAP, and payments made to local governments in lieu of taxes which are commensurate with the local government services received are allowable, except for taxes from which exemptions are available to the organization directly or which are available to the organization based on an exemption afforded the Federal Government and in the latter case when the awarding agency makes available the necessary exemption certificates, special assessments on land which represent capital improvements, and Federal income taxes.

b. Any refund of taxes, and any payment to the organization of interest thereon, which were allowed as award costs, will be credited either as a cost reduction or cash refund, as appropriate, to the Federal Government.

48. Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements. Termination of awards generally gives rise to the incurrence of costs, or the need for special treatment of costs, which would not have arisen had the Federal award not been terminated. Cost principles covering these items are set forth below. They are to be used in conjunction with the other provisions of this appendix in termination situations.

a. The cost of items reasonably usable on the non-profit organization's other work shall not be allowable unless the non-profit organization submits evidence that it would not retain such items at cost without sustaining a loss. In deciding whether such items are reasonably usable on other work of the non-profit organization, the awarding agency should consider the non-profit organization's plans and orders for current and scheduled activity. Contemporaneous purchases of common items by the non-profit organization shall be regarded as evidence that such items are reasonably usable on the non-profit organization's other work. Any acceptance of common items as allocable to the terminated portion of the Federal award shall be limited to the extent that the quantities of such items on hand, in transit, and on order are in excess of the reasonable quantitative requirements of other work.

b. If in a particular case, despite all reasonable efforts by the non-profit organization, certain costs cannot be discontinued immediately after the effective date of termination, such costs are generally allowable within the limitations set forth in this appendix, except that any such costs continuing after termination due to the negligent or willful failure of the non-profit organization to discontinue such costs shall be unallowable.

c. Loss of useful value of special tooling, machinery, and is generally allowable if:

(1) Such special tooling, special machinery, or equipment is not reasonably capable of use in the other work of the non-profit organization,

(2) The interest of the Federal Government is protected by transfer of title or by other means deemed appropriate by the awarding agency, and

(3) The loss of useful value for any one terminated Federal award is limited to that portion of the acquisition cost which bears the same ratio to the total acquisition cost as the terminated portion of the Federal award bears to the entire terminated Federal award and other Federal awards for which the special tooling, special machinery, or equipment was acquired.

d. Rental costs under unexpired leases are generally allowable where clearly shown to have been reasonably necessary for the performance of the terminated Federal award less the residual value of such leases, if:

(1) The amount of such rental claimed does not exceed the reasonable use value of the property leased for the period of the Federal award and such further period as may be reasonable, and

(2) The non-profit organization makes all reasonable efforts to terminate, assign, settle, or otherwise reduce the cost of such lease. There also may be included the cost of alterations of such leased property, provided such alterations were necessary for the performance of the Federal award, and of reasonable restoration required by the provisions of the lease.

e. Settlement expenses including the following are generally allowable:

(1) Accounting, legal, clerical, and similar costs reasonably necessary for:

(a) The preparation and presentation to the awarding agency of settlement claims and supporting data with respect to the terminated portion of the Federal award, unless the termination is for default (see § 215.61 of 2 CFR part 215 (OMB Circular A-110)); and

(b) The termination and settlement of subawards.

(2) Reasonable costs for the storage, transportation, protection, and disposition of property provided by the Federal Government or acquired or produced for the Federal award, except when grantees or contractors are reimbursed for disposals at a predetermined amount in accordance with § 215.32 through 215.37 of 2 CFR part 215 (OMB Circular A-110).

(3) Indirect costs related to salaries and wages incurred as settlement expenses in subparagraphs 48.e.(1) and (2) of this appendix. Normally, such indirect costs shall be limited to fringe benefits, occupancy cost, and immediate supervision.

f. Claims under sub awards, including the allocable portion of claims which are common to the Federal award, and to other work of the non-profit organization are generally allowable.

An appropriate share of the non-profit organization's indirect expense may be allocated to the amount of settlements with subcontractors and/or subgrantees, provided that the amount allocated is otherwise consistent with the basic guidelines contained in Appendix A. The indirect expense so allocated shall exclude the same and similar costs claimed directly or indirectly as settlement expenses.

49. Training costs. a. Costs of preparation and maintenance of a program of instruction including but not limited to on-the-job, classroom, and apprenticeship training, designed to increase the vocational effectiveness of employees, including training materials, textbooks, salaries or wages of trainees (excluding overtime compensation which might arise therefrom), and (i) salaries of the director of training and staff when the training program is conducted by the organization; or (ii) tuition and fees when the training is in an institution not operated by the organization, are allowable.

b. Costs of part-time education, at an undergraduate or post-graduate college level, including that provided at the organization's own facilities, are allowable only when the course or degree pursued is relative to the field in which the employee is now working or may reasonably be expected to work, and are limited to:

(1) Training materials.

(2) Textbooks.

(3) Fees charges by the educational institution.

(4) Tuition charged by the educational institution or, in lieu of tuition, instructors' salaries and the related share of indirect costs of the educational institution to the extent that the sum thereof is not in excess of the tuition which would have been paid to the participating educational institution.

(5) Salaries and related costs of instructors who are employees of the organization.

(6) Straight-time compensation of each employee for time spent attending classes during working hours not in excess of 156 hours per year and only to the extent that circumstances do not permit the operation of classes or attendance at classes after regular working hours; otherwise, such compensation is unallowable.

c. Costs of tuition, fees, training materials, and textbooks (but not subsistence, salary, or any other emoluments) in connection with full-time education, including that provided at the organization's own facilities, at a post-graduate (but not undergraduate) college level, are allowable only when the course or degree pursued is related to the field in which the employee is now working or may reasonably be expected to work, and only where the costs receive the prior approval of the awarding agency. Such costs are limited to the costs attributable to a total period not to exceed one school year for each employee so trained. In unusual cases the period may be extended.

d. Costs of attendance of up to 16 weeks per employee per year at specialized

programs specifically designed to enhance the effectiveness of executives or managers or to prepare employees for such positions are allowable. Such costs include enrollment fees, training materials, textbooks and related charges, employees' salaries, subsistence, and travel. Costs allowable under this paragraph do not include those for courses that are part of a degree-oriented curriculum, which are allowable only to the extent set forth in subparagraphs b and c.

e. Maintenance expense, and normal depreciation or fair rental, on facilities owned or leased by the organization for training purposes are allowable to the extent set forth in paragraphs 11, 27, and 50 of this appendix.

f. Contributions or donations to educational or training institutions, including the donation of facilities or other properties, and scholarships or fellowships, are unallowable.

g. Training and education costs in excess of those otherwise allowable under subparagraphs 49.b and c of this appendix may be allowed with prior approval of the awarding agency. To be considered for approval, the organization must demonstrate that such costs are consistently incurred pursuant to an established training and education program, and that the course or degree pursued is relative to the field in which the employee is now working or may reasonably be expected to work.

50. Transportation costs. Transportation costs include freight, express, cartage, and postage charges relating either to goods purchased, in process, or delivered. These costs are allowable. When such costs can readily be identified with the items involved, they may be directly charged as transportation costs or added to the cost of such items (see paragraph 28 of this appendix). Where identification with the materials received cannot readily be made, transportation costs may be charged to the appropriate indirect cost accounts if the organization follows a consistent, equitable procedure in this respect.

51. Travel costs:

a. General. Travel costs are the expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the non-profit organization. Such costs may be charged on an actual cost basis, on a per diem or mileage basis in lieu of actual costs incurred, or on a combination of the two, provided the method used is applied to an entire trip and not to selected days of the trip, and results in charges consistent with those normally allowed in like circumstances in the non-profit organization's non-federally-sponsored activities.

b. Lodging and subsistence. Costs incurred by employees and officers for travel, including costs of lodging, other subsistence, and incidental expenses, shall be considered reasonable and allowable only to the extent such costs do not exceed charges normally allowed by the non-profit organization in its regular operations as the result of the non-profit organization's written travel policy. In the absence of an acceptable, written non-profit organization policy regarding travel costs, the rates and amounts established

under subchapter I of Chapter 57, Title 5, United States Code ("Travel and Subsistence Expenses; Mileage Allowances"), or by the Administrator of General Services, or by the President (or his or her designee) pursuant to any provisions of such subchapter shall apply to travel under Federal awards (48 CFR 31.205-46(a)).

c. Commercial air travel. (1) Airfare costs in excess of the customary standard commercial airfare (coach or equivalent), Federal Government contract airfare (where authorized and available), or the lowest commercial discount airfare are unallowable except when such accommodations would: require circuitous routing; require travel during unreasonable hours; excessively prolong travel; result in additional costs that would offset the transportation savings; or offer accommodations not reasonably adequate for the traveler's medical needs. The non-profit organization must justify and document these conditions on a case-by-case basis in order for the use of first-class airfare to be allowable in such cases.

(2) Unless a pattern of avoidance is detected, the Federal Government will generally not question a non-profit organization's determinations that customary standard airfare or other discount airfare is unavailable for specific trips if the non-profit organization can demonstrate either of the following: that such airfare was not available in the specific case; or that it is the non-profit organization's overall practice to make routine use of such airfare.

d. Air travel by other than commercial carrier. Costs of travel by non-profit organization-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft include the cost of lease, charter, operation (including personnel costs), maintenance, depreciation, insurance, and other related costs. The portion of such costs that exceeds the cost of allowable commercial air travel, as provided for in subparagraph] c., is unallowable.

e. Foreign travel. Direct charges for foreign travel costs are allowable only when the travel has received prior approval of the awarding agency. Each separate foreign trip must receive such approval. For purposes of this provision, "foreign travel" includes any travel outside Canada, Mexico, the United States, and any United States territories and possessions. However, the term "foreign travel" for a non-profit organization located in a foreign country means travel outside that country.

52. Trustees. Travel and subsistence costs of trustees (or directors) are allowable. The costs are subject to restrictions regarding lodging, subsistence and air travel costs provided in paragraph 51 of this appendix.

Appendix C to Part 230—Non-Profit Organizations Not Subject to This Part

1. Advance Technology Institute (ATI), Charleston, South Carolina
2. Aerospace Corporation, El Segundo, California
3. American Institutes of Research (AIR), Washington DC
4. Argonne National Laboratory, Chicago, Illinois
5. Atomic Casualty Commission, Washington, DC
6. Battelle Memorial Institute, Headquartered in Columbus, Ohio
7. Brookhaven National Laboratory, Upton, New York
8. Charles Stark Draper Laboratory, Incorporated, Cambridge, Massachusetts
9. CNA Corporation (CNAC), Alexandria, Virginia
10. Environmental Institute of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan
11. Georgia Institute of Technology/Georgia Tech Applied Research Corporation/ Georgia Tech Research Institute, Atlanta, Georgia
12. Hanford Environmental Health Foundation, Richland, Washington
13. IFT Research Institute, Chicago, Illinois
14. Institute of Gas Technology, Chicago, Illinois
15. Institute for Defense Analysis, Alexandria, Virginia
16. LMI, McLean, Virginia
17. Mitre Corporation, Bedford, Massachusetts
18. Mitretek Systems, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia
19. National Radiological Astronomy Observatory, Green Bank, West Virginia
20. National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden, Colorado
21. Oak Ridge Associated Universities, Oak Ridge, Tennessee
22. Rand Corporation, Santa Monica, California
23. Research Triangle Institute, Research Triangle Park, North Carolina
24. Riverside Research Institute, New York, New York
25. South Carolina Research Authority (SCRA), Charleston, South Carolina
26. Southern Research Institute, Birmingham, Alabama
27. Southwest Research Institute, San Antonio, Texas
28. SRI International, Menlo Park, California
29. Syracuse Research Corporation, Syracuse, New York
30. Universities Research Association, Incorporated (National Acceleration Lab), Argonne, Illinois
31. Urban Institute, Washington DC
32. Non-profit insurance companies, such as Blue Cross and Blue Shield Organizations
33. Other non-profit organizations as negotiated with awarding agencies

[FR Doc. 05-16650 Filed 8-30-05; 8:45 am]
BILLING CODE 3110-01-P

Department of Housing & Urban Development

24 CFR Part 84

**Part 84 - Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements
with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and
Other Non-Profit Organizations)
(OMB Circular A-110)**

Title 24: Housing and Urban Development

PART 84—UNIFORM ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR GRANTS AND AGREEMENTS WITH INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER EDUCATION, HOSPITALS, AND OTHER NON-PROFIT ORGANIZATIONS

Section Contents

Subpart A—General

- § 84.1 Purpose.
- § 84.2 Definitions.
- § 84.3 Effect on other issuances.
- § 84.4 Deviations.
- § 84.5 Subawards.

Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements

- § 84.10 Purpose.
- § 84.11 Pre-award policies.
- § 84.12 Forms for applying for Federal assistance.
- § 84.13 Debarment and suspension; Drug-Free Workplace.
- § 84.14 Special award conditions.
- § 84.15 Metric system of measurement.
- § 84.16 Resource Conservation and Recovery Act.
- § 84.17 Certifications and representations.

Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements

Financial and Program Management

- § 84.20 Purpose of financial and program management.
- § 84.21 Standards for financial management systems.
- § 84.22 Payment.
- § 84.23 Cost sharing or matching.
- § 84.24 Program income.
- § 84.25 Revision of budget and program plans.
- § 84.26 Non-Federal audits.
- § 84.27 Allowable costs.
- § 84.28 Period of availability of funds.

Property Standards

- § 84.30 Purpose of property standards.
- § 84.31 Insurance coverage.
- § 84.32 Real property.
- § 84.33 Federally-owned and exempt property.
- § 84.34 Equipment.
- § 84.35 Supplies and other expendable property.
- § 84.36 Intangible property.
- § 84.37 Property trust relationship.

Procurement Standards

- § 84.40 Purpose of procurement standards.
- § 84.41 Recipient responsibilities.

- § 84.42 Codes of conduct.
- § 84.43 Competition.
- § 84.44 Procurement procedures.
- § 84.45 Cost and price analysis.
- § 84.46 Procurement records.
- § 84.47 Contract administration.
- § 84.48 Contract provisions.

Reports and Records

- § 84.50 Purpose of reports and records.
- § 84.51 Monitoring and reporting program performance.
- § 84.52 Financial reporting.
- § 84.53 Retention and access requirements for records.

Termination and Enforcement

- § 84.60 Purpose of termination and enforcement.
- § 84.61 Termination.
- § 84.62 Enforcement.

Subpart D—After-the-Award Requirements

- § 84.70 Purpose.
- § 84.71 Closeout procedures.
- § 84.72 Subsequent adjustments and continuing responsibilities.
- § 84.73 Collection of amounts due.

Subpart E—Use of Lump Sum Grants

- § 84.80 Conditions for use of Lump Sum (fixed price or fixed amount) grants.
- § 84.81 Definition.
- § 84.82 Provisions applicable only to lump sum grants.
- § 84.83 Property standards.
- § 84.84 Procurement standards.
- § 84.85 Reports and records.
- § 84.86 Termination and enforcement.
- § 84.87 Closeout procedures, subsequent adjustments and continuing responsibilities.

Appendix A to Part 84—Contract Provisions

Authority: 42 U.S.C. 3535(d).

Source: 59 FR 47011, Sept. 13, 1994, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General

§ 84.1 Purpose.

This part establishes uniform administrative requirements for Federal grants and agreements awarded to institutions of higher education, hospitals, and other non-profit organizations. Additional or inconsistent requirements shall not be imposed, except as provided in §§84.4, and 84.14 or unless specifically required by Federal statute or executive order. Non-profit organizations that implement Federal programs for the States are also subject to State requirements.

§ 84.2 Definitions.

Accrued expenditures means the charges incurred by the recipient during a given period requiring the provision of funds for:

- (1) Goods and other tangible property received;
- (2) Services performed by employees, contractors, subrecipients, and other payees; and
- (3) Other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance is required.

Accrued income means the sum of:

- (1) Earnings during a given period from:
 - (i) Services performed by the recipient; and
 - (ii) Goods and other tangible property delivered to purchasers; and
- (2) Amounts becoming owed to the recipient for which no current services or performance is required by the recipient.

Acquisition cost of equipment means the net invoice price of the equipment, including the cost of modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make the property usable for the purpose for which it was acquired. Other charges, such as the cost of installation, transportation, taxes, duty or protective in-transit insurance, shall be included or excluded from the unit acquisition cost in accordance with the recipient's regular accounting practices.

Advance means a payment made by Treasury check or other appropriate payment mechanism to a recipient upon its request either before outlays are made by the recipient or through the use of predetermined payment schedules.

Award means financial assistance that provides support or stimulation to accomplish a public purpose. Awards include grants and other agreements in the form of money or property in lieu of money, by HUD to an eligible recipient. The term does not include: technical assistance, which provides services instead of money; other assistance in the form of loans, loan guarantees, capital advances under the Sections 202 and 811 programs, interest subsidies, or insurance; direct payments of any kind to individuals; and, contracts which are required to be entered into and administered under procurement laws and regulations.

Cash contributions means the recipient's cash outlay, including the outlay of money contributed to the recipient by third parties.

Closeout means the process by which HUD determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the award have been completed by the recipient and HUD.

Contract means a procurement contract under an award or sub-award, and a procurement subcontract under a recipient's or sub-recipient's contract.

Cost sharing or matching means that portion of project or program costs not borne by HUD.

Date of completion means the date on which all work under an award is completed or the date on the award document, or any supplement or amendment thereto, on which HUD sponsorship ends.

Disallowed costs means those charges to an award that HUD determines to be unallowable, in accordance with the applicable Federal cost principles or other terms and conditions contained in the award.

Equipment means tangible nonexpendable personal property including exempt property charged directly to the award having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of \$5000 or more per unit. However, consistent with recipient policy, lower limits may be established.

Excess property means property under the control of HUD that, as determined by the Secretary, is no longer required for its needs or the discharge of its responsibilities.

Exempt property means tangible personal property acquired in whole or in part with Federal funds, where HUD has statutory authority to vest title in the recipient without further obligation to

the Federal Government. An example of exempt property authority is contained in the Federal Grant and Cooperative Agreement Act (31 U.S.C. 6306), for property acquired under an award to conduct basic or applied research by a non-profit institution of higher education or non-profit organization whose principal purpose is conducting scientific research.

Federal awarding agency means the Federal agency that provides an award to the recipient.

Federal funds authorized means the total amount of Federal funds obligated by HUD for use by the recipient. This amount may include any authorized carryover of unobligated funds from prior funding periods when permitted by HUD regulations or implementing instructions.

Federal share of real property, equipment, or supplies means that percentage of the property's acquisition costs and any improvement expenditures paid with Federal funds.

Funding period means the period of time when Federal funding is available for obligation by the recipient.

Intangible property and debt instruments means, but is not limited to, trademarks, copyrights, patents and patent applications and such property as loans, notes and other debt instruments, lease agreements, stock and other instruments of property ownership, whether considered tangible or intangible.

Obligations means the amounts of orders placed, contracts and grants awarded, services received and similar transactions during a given period that require payment by the recipient during the same or a future period.

Outlays or expenditures means charges made to the project or program. They may be reported on a cash or accrual basis. For reports prepared on a cash basis, outlays are the sum of cash disbursements for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense charged, the value of third party in-kind contributions applied and the amount of cash advances and payments made to subrecipients. For reports prepared on an accrual basis, outlays are the sum of cash disbursements for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the net increase (or decrease) in the amounts owed by the recipient for goods and other property received, for services performed by employees, contractors, subrecipients and other payees and other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance are required.

Personal property means property of any kind except real property. It may be tangible, having physical existence, or intangible, having no physical existence, such as copyrights, patents, or securities.

Prior approval means written approval by an authorized official evidencing prior consent.

Program income means gross income earned by the recipient that is directly generated by a supported activity or earned as a result of the award (see exclusions in §§84.24 (e) and (h)). Program income includes, but is not limited to, income from fees for services performed, the use or rental of real or personal property acquired under federally-funded projects, the sale of commodities or items fabricated under an award, license fees and royalties on patents and copyrights, and interest on loans made with award funds. Interest earned on advances of Federal funds is not program income. Except as otherwise provided in HUD regulations or the terms and conditions of the award, program income does not include the receipt of principal on loans, rebates, credits, discounts, etc., or interest earned on any of them.

Project costs means all allowable costs, as set forth in the applicable Federal cost principles, incurred by a recipient and the value of the contributions made by third parties in accomplishing the objectives of the award during the project period.

Project period means the period established in the award document during which HUD sponsorship begins and ends.

Property means, unless otherwise stated, real property, equipment, intangible property and debt instruments.

Real property means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, but excludes movable machinery and equipment.

Recipient means an organization receiving financial assistance directly from HUD to carry out a project or program. The term includes public and private institutions of higher education, public and private hospitals, and other quasi-public and private non-profit organizations such as, but not limited to, community action agencies, research institutes, educational associations, and health centers. The term includes commercial organizations, international organizations when operating domestically (such as agencies of the United Nations) which are recipients, subrecipients, or contractors or subcontractors of recipients or subrecipients. The term does not include government-owned contractor-operated facilities or research centers providing continued support for mission-oriented, large-scale programs that are government-owned or controlled, or are designated as federally-funded research and development centers. The term does not include mortgagors that receive mortgages insured or held by HUD or mortgagors or project owners that receive capital advances from HUD under the Section 202 and 811 programs.

Research and development means all research activities, both basic and applied, and all development activities that are supported at universities, colleges, and other non-profit institutions. "Research" is defined as a systematic study directed toward fuller scientific knowledge or understanding of the subject studied. "Development" is the systematic use of knowledge and understanding gained from research directed toward the production of useful materials, devices, systems, or methods, including design and development of prototypes and processes. The term research also includes activities involving the training of individuals in research techniques where such activities utilize the same facilities as other research and development activities and where such activities are not included in the instruction function.

Small awards means a grant or cooperative agreement not exceeding \$100,000 or the small purchase threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403(11), whichever is greater.

Sub-award means:

(1) An award of financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, made under an award by a recipient to an eligible subrecipient or by a subrecipient to a lower tier subrecipient. The term includes financial assistance when provided by any legal agreement, even if the agreement is called a contract, but does not include procurement of goods and services nor does it include any form of assistance which is excluded from the definition of "award".

(2) For Community Development Block Grants, the term "sub-award" does not include the arrangement whereby the prime recipient transfers funds to another entity and that entity is the project. A distinction is made between such a transfer for the furtherance of the prime recipient's goals and the transfer of funds to a subrecipient who carries out activities and is accountable to the prime recipient. For example, in a CDBG award where a prime recipient has as its program goal the revitalization of a downtown area, the funds transferred to a business in the downtown area to remodel its store would not be considered a sub-award subject to this part 84.

Subrecipient means the legal entity to which a sub-award is made and which is accountable to the recipient for the use of the funds provided. The term includes commercial organizations and international organizations operating domestically (such as agencies of the United Nations).

Supplies means all personal property excluding equipment, intangible property, and debt instruments as defined in this section, and inventions of a contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under a funding agreement ("subject inventions"), as defined in 37 CFR part 401, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts, and Cooperative Agreements."

Suspension means an action by HUD that temporarily withdraws HUD sponsorship under an award, pending corrective action by the recipient or pending a decision to terminate the award by HUD. Suspension of an award is a separate action from suspension under HUD regulations implementing E.O. 12549 and E.O. 12689, "Debarment and Suspension," at 24 CFR part 24.

Termination means the cancellation of HUD sponsorship, in whole or in part, under an agreement at any time prior to the date of completion.

Third party in-kind contributions means the value of non-cash contributions provided by non-Federal third parties. Third party in-kind contributions may be in the form of real property, equipment, supplies and other expendable property, and the value of goods and services directly benefiting and specifically identifiable to the project or program.

Unliquidated obligations, for financial reports prepared on a cash basis, means the amount of obligations incurred by the recipient that have not been paid. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, they represent the amount of obligations incurred by the recipient for which an outlay has not been recorded.

Unobligated balance means the portion of the funds authorized by HUD that has not been obligated by the recipient and is determined by deducting the cumulative obligations from the cumulative funds authorized.

Un-recovered indirect cost means the difference between the amount awarded and the amount which could have been awarded under the recipient's approved negotiated indirect cost rate.

Working capital advance means a procedure whereby funds are advanced to the recipient to cover its estimated disbursement needs for a given initial period.

§ 84.3 Effect on other issuances.

For awards subject to this part, all administrative requirements of codified program regulations, program manuals, handbooks and other non-regulatory materials which are inconsistent with the requirements of this part shall be superseded, except to the extent they are required by statute, or authorized in accordance with the deviations provision in §84.4.

§ 84.4 Deviations.

The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) may grant exceptions for classes of grants or recipients subject to the requirements of this rule when exceptions are not prohibited by statute. However, in the interest of maximum uniformity, exceptions from the requirements of this rule shall be permitted only in unusual circumstances. HUD may apply more restrictive requirements to a class of recipients when approved by OMB. HUD may apply less restrictive requirements when awarding small awards and when approved by OMB, except for those requirements which are statutory. Exceptions on a case-by-case basis may also be made by HUD.

§ 84.5 Subawards.

Unless sections of this part specifically exclude subrecipients from coverage, the provisions of this part shall be applied to subrecipients performing work under awards if such subrecipients are institutions of higher education, hospitals, commercial organizations and international organizations operating domestically, or other non-profit organizations. State, local and Federally recognized Indian tribal government subrecipients are subject to the provisions of regulations implementing the grants management common rule, "Administrative Requirements for Grants and

Cooperative Agreements to State, Local and Federally Recognized Indian Tribal Governments,” (24 CFR part 85).

Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements

§ 84.10 Purpose.

Sections 84.11 through 84.17 prescribe forms and instructions and other pre-award matters to be used in applying for HUD awards.

§ 84.11 Pre-award policies.

(a) *Use of Grants and Cooperative Agreements, and Contracts.* In each instance, HUD shall decide on the appropriate award instrument (i.e., grant, cooperative agreement, or contract). The Federal Grant and Cooperative Agreement Act (31 U.S.C. 6301-08) governs the use of grants, cooperative agreements and contracts. A grant or cooperative agreement shall be used only when the principal purpose of a transaction is to accomplish a public purpose of support or stimulation authorized by Federal statute. The statutory criterion for choosing between grants and cooperative agreements is that for the latter, “substantial involvement is expected between the executive agency and the State, local government, or other recipient when carrying out the activity contemplated in the agreement.” Contracts shall be used when the principal purpose is acquisition of property or services for the direct benefit or use of the Federal Government.

(b) *Public Notice and Priority Setting.* HUD shall notify the public of its intended funding priorities for discretionary grant programs, unless funding priorities are established by Federal statute.

§ 84.12 Forms for applying for Federal assistance.

(a) HUD shall comply with the applicable report clearance requirements of 5 CFR part 1320, “Controlling Paperwork Burdens on the Public,” with regard to all forms used by HUD in place of or as a supplement to the Standard Form 424 (SF-424) series.

(b) Applicants shall use the SF-424 series or those forms and instructions prescribed by HUD.

(c) For Federal programs covered by E.O. 12372, “Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs,” the applicant shall complete the appropriate sections of the SF-424 (Application for Federal Assistance) indicating whether the application was subject to review by the State Single Point of Contact (SPOC). The name and address of the SPOC for a particular State can be obtained from the *Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance*. The SPOC shall advise the applicant whether the program for which application is made has been selected by that State for review.

§ 84.13 Debarment and suspension; Drug-Free Workplace.

(a) HUD and its recipients and subrecipients shall comply with the non-procurement debarment and suspension common rule implementing E.O.s 12549 and 12689, “Debarment and Suspension,” at 24 CFR part 24. This common rule restricts sub-awards and contracts with certain parties that are debarred, suspended or otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs or activities.

(b) HUD and its recipients and subrecipients shall comply with the certification requirements of the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988 (42 U.S.C. 701), as set forth at 24 CFR part 24, subpart F.

§ 84.14 Special award conditions.

If an applicant or recipient:

(a) Has a history of poor performance;

(b) Is not financially stable;

(c) Has a management system that does not meet the standards prescribed in this part;

(d) Has not conformed to the terms and conditions of a previous award; or
(e) Is not otherwise responsible, HUD may impose additional requirements as needed, provided that such applicant or recipient is notified in writing as to: the nature of the additional requirements, the reason why the additional requirements are being imposed, the nature of the corrective action needed, the time allowed for completing the corrective actions, and the method for requesting reconsideration of the additional requirements imposed. Any special conditions shall be promptly removed once the conditions that prompted them have been corrected.

§ 84.15 Metric system of measurement.

The Metric Conversion Act, as amended by the Omnibus Trade and Competitiveness Act (15 U.S.C. 205) declares that the metric system is the preferred measurement system for U.S. trade and commerce. The Act requires each Federal agency to establish a date or dates in consultation with the Secretary of Commerce, when the metric system of measurement will be used in the agency's procurements, grants, and other business-related activities. Metric implementation may take longer where the use of the system is initially impractical or likely to cause significant inefficiencies in the accomplishment of federally-funded activities. HUD shall follow the provisions of E.O. 12770, "Metric Usage in Federal Government Programs."

§ 84.16 Resource Conservation and Recovery Act.

Under the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) (Pub. L. 94-580, 42 U.S.C. 6962), any State agency or agency of a political subdivision of a State which is using appropriated Federal funds must comply with Section 6002. Section 6002 requires that preference be given in procurement programs to the purchase of specific products containing recycled materials identified in guidelines developed by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) (40 CFR parts 247 through 254). Accordingly, State and local institutions of higher education, hospitals, commercial organizations and international organizations when operating domestically, and non-profit organizations that receive direct Federal awards or other Federal funds shall give preference in their procurement programs funded with Federal funds to the purchase of recycled products pursuant to the EPA guidelines.

§ 84.17 Certifications and representations.

Unless prohibited by statute or codified regulation, HUD is authorized and encouraged to allow recipients to submit certifications and representations required by statute, executive order, or regulation on an annual basis, if the recipients have ongoing and continuing relationships with the agency. Annual certifications and representations shall be signed by responsible officials with the authority to ensure recipients' compliance with the pertinent requirements.

Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements

Financial and Program Management

§ 84.20 Purpose of financial and program management.

Sections 84.21 through 84.28 prescribe standards for financial management systems, methods for making payments and rules for: satisfying cost sharing and matching requirements, accounting for program income, budget revision approvals, making audits, determining allowability of cost, and establishing fund availability.

§ 84.21 Standards for financial management systems.

- (a) HUD shall require recipients to relate financial data to performance data and develop unit cost information whenever practical.
- (b) Recipients' financial management systems shall provide for the following:
- (1) Accurate, current and complete disclosure of the financial results of each federally-sponsored project or program in accordance with the reporting requirements set forth in §84.52. If a recipient maintains its records on other than an accrual basis, the recipient shall not be required to establish an accrual accounting system. These recipients may develop such accrual data for their reports on the basis of an analysis of the documentation on hand.
 - (2) Records that identify adequately the source and application of funds for federally-sponsored activities. These records shall contain information pertaining to Federal awards, authorizations, obligations, unobligated balances, assets, outlays, income and interest.
 - (3) Effective control over and accountability for all funds, property and other assets. Recipients shall adequately safeguard all such assets and assure they are used solely for authorized purposes.
 - (4) Comparison of outlays with budget amounts for each award. Whenever appropriate, financial information should be related to performance and unit cost data.
 - (5) Written procedures to minimize the time-elapsing between the transfer of funds to the recipient from the U.S. Treasury and the issuance or redemption of checks, warrants or payments by other means for program purposes by the recipient. To the extent that the provisions of the Cash Management Improvement Act (CMIA) (Pub. L. 101-453) govern, payment methods of State agencies, instrumentalities, and fiscal agents shall be consistent with CMIA Treasury-State Agreements or the CMIA default procedures codified at 31 CFR part 205, "Withdrawal of Cash from the Treasury for Advances under Federal Grant and Other Programs."
 - (6) Written procedures for determining the reasonableness, allocability and allowability of costs in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Federal cost principles and the terms and conditions of the award.
 - (7) Accounting records including cost accounting records that are supported by source documentation.
- (c) Where the Federal Government guarantees or insures the repayment of money borrowed by the recipient, HUD, at its discretion, may require adequate bonding and insurance if the bonding and insurance requirements of the recipient are not deemed adequate to protect the interest of the Federal Government.
- (d) HUD may require adequate fidelity bond coverage where the recipient lacks sufficient coverage to protect the Federal Government's interest.
- (e) Where bonds are required in the situations described above, the bonds shall be obtained from companies holding certificates of authority as acceptable sureties, as prescribed in 31 CFR part 223, "Surety Companies Doing Business with the United States."

§ 84.22 Payment.

- (a) Payment methods shall minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the United States Treasury and the issuance or redemption of checks, warrants, or payment by other means by the recipients. Payment methods of State agencies or instrumentalities shall be consistent with Treasury-State CMIA agreements or default procedures codified at 31 CFR part 205.
- (b) Recipients are to be paid in advance, provided they maintain or demonstrate the willingness to maintain:
- (1) Written procedures that minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement by the recipient; and
 - (2) Financial management systems that meet the standards for fund control and accountability as established in §84.21. Cash advances to a recipient organization shall be limited to the minimum amounts needed and be timed to be in accordance with the actual, immediate cash requirements of the recipient organization in carrying out the purpose of the approved program or project. The timing and amount of cash advances shall be as close as

- is administratively feasible to the actual disbursements by the recipient organization for direct program or project costs and the proportionate share of any allowable indirect costs.
- (c) Whenever possible, advances shall be consolidated to cover anticipated cash needs for all awards made by HUD to the recipient.
- (1) Advance payment mechanisms include, but are not limited to, Treasury check and electronic funds transfer.
 - (2) Advance payment mechanisms are subject to 31 CFR part 205.
 - (3) Recipients shall be authorized to submit requests for advances and reimbursements at least monthly when electronic fund transfers are not used.
- (d) Requests for Treasury check advance payment shall be submitted on SF-270, "Request for Advance or Reimbursement," or other forms as may be authorized by OMB. This form is not to be used when Treasury check advance payments are made to the recipient automatically through the use of a predetermined payment schedule or if precluded by special HUD instructions for electronic funds transfer.
- (e) Reimbursement is the preferred method when the requirements in paragraph (b) of this section cannot be met. HUD may also use this method on any construction agreement, or if the major portion of the construction project is accomplished through private market financing or Federal loans, and the Federal assistance constitutes a minor portion of the project.
- (1) When the reimbursement method is used, HUD shall make payment within 30 days after receipt of the billing, unless the billing is improper.
 - (2) Recipients shall be authorized to submit request for reimbursement at least monthly when electronic funds transfers are not used.
- (f) If a recipient cannot meet the criteria for advance payments and HUD has determined that reimbursement is not feasible because the recipient lacks sufficient working capital, HUD may provide cash on a working capital advance basis. Under this procedure, HUD shall advance cash to the recipient to cover its estimated disbursement needs for an initial period generally geared to the awardee's disbursing cycle. Thereafter, HUD shall reimburse the recipient for its actual cash disbursements. The working capital advance method of payment shall not be used for recipients unwilling or unable to provide timely advances to their subrecipient to meet the subrecipient's actual cash disbursements.
- (g) To the extent available, recipients shall disburse funds available from repayments to and interest earned on a revolving fund, program income, rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.
- (h) Unless otherwise required by statute, HUD shall not withhold payments for proper charges made by recipients at any time during the project period unless paragraphs (h)(1) or (h)(2) of this section apply.
- (1) A recipient has failed to comply with the project objectives, the terms and conditions of the award, or Federal reporting requirements.
 - (2) The recipient or subrecipient is delinquent in a debt to the United States as defined in OMB Circular A-129, "Managing Federal Credit Programs." Under such conditions, HUD may, upon reasonable notice, inform the recipient that payments shall not be made for obligations incurred after a specified date until the conditions are corrected or the indebtedness to the Federal Government is liquidated.
- (i) Standards governing the use of banks and other institutions as depositories of funds advanced under awards are as follows.
- (1) Except for situations described in paragraph (i)(2) of this section, HUD shall not require separate depository accounts for funds provided to a recipient or establish any eligibility requirements for depositories for funds provided to a recipient. However, recipients must be able to account for the receipt, obligation and expenditure of funds.
 - (2) Advances of Federal funds shall be deposited and maintained in insured accounts whenever possible.
- (j) Consistent with the national goal of expanding the opportunities for women-owned and minority-owned business enterprises, recipients shall be encouraged to use women-owned and minority-owned banks (a bank which is owned at least 50 percent by women or minority group members).
- (k) Recipients shall maintain advances of Federal funds in interest bearing accounts, unless paragraphs (k)(1), (k)(2), or (k)(3) of this section apply.

- (1) The recipient receives less than \$120,000 in Federal awards per year.
 - (2) The best reasonably available interest bearing account would not be expected to earn interest in excess of \$250 per year on Federal cash balances.
 - (3) The depository would require an average or minimum balance so high that it would not be feasible within the expected Federal and non-Federal cash resources.
- (l) For those entities where CMIA and its implementing regulations do not apply, interest earned on Federal advances deposited in interest bearing accounts shall be remitted annually to Department of Health and Human Services, Payment Management System, P.O. Box 6021, Rockville, MD 20852. In keeping with Electronic Funds Transfer rules (31 CFR part 206), interest should be remitted to the HHS Payment Management System through an electronic medium such as the FEDWIRE Deposit system. Recipients which do not have this capability should use a check. Interest amounts up to \$250 per year may be retained by the recipient for administrative expense. State universities and hospitals shall comply with CMIA, as it pertains to interest. If an entity subject to CMIA uses its own funds to pay pre-award costs for discretionary awards without prior written approval from the Federal awarding agency, it waives its right to recover the interest under CMIA.
- (m) Except as noted elsewhere in this rule, only the following forms shall be authorized for the recipients in requesting advances and reimbursements. Federal agencies shall not require more than an original and two copies of these forms.
- (1) *SF-270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement.* HUD has adopted the SF-270 as a standard form for all non-construction programs when electronic funds transfer or predetermined advance methods are not used. HUD has the option of using this form for construction programs in lieu of the SF-271, "Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs."
 - (2) *SF-271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs.* HUD has adopted the SF-271 as the standard form to be used for requesting reimbursement for construction programs. However, HUD may substitute the SF-270 when HUD determines that it provides adequate information to meet Federal needs.

§ 84.23 Cost sharing or matching.

- (a) All contributions, including cash and third party in-kind, shall be accepted as part of the recipient's cost sharing or matching when such contributions meet all of the following criteria.
- (1) Are verifiable from the recipient's records.
 - (2) Are not included as contributions for any other federally-assisted project or program.
 - (3) Are necessary and reasonable for proper and efficient accomplishment of project or program objectives.
 - (4) Are allowable under the applicable cost principles.
 - (5) Are not paid by the Federal Government under another award, except where authorized by Federal statute to be used for cost sharing or matching.
 - (6) Are provided for in the approved budget when required by HUD.
 - (7) Conform to other provisions of this part, as applicable.
- (b) Unrecovered indirect costs may be included as part of cost sharing or matching only with the prior approval of HUD.
- (c) Values for recipient contributions of services and property shall be established in accordance with the applicable cost principles. If HUD authorizes recipients to donate buildings or land for construction/facilities acquisition projects or long-term use, the value of the donated property for cost sharing or matching shall be the lesser of paragraphs (c)(1) or (c)(2) of this section.
- (1) The certified value of the remaining life of the property recorded in the recipient's accounting records at the time of donation.
 - (2) *The current fair market value.* However, when there is sufficient justification, HUD may approve the use of the current fair market value of the donated property, even if it exceeds the certified value at the time of donation to the project.
- (d) Volunteer services furnished by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor may be counted as cost sharing or matching if the service is an integral and necessary part of an approved project or program. Rates for volunteer services shall be

consistent with those paid for similar work in the recipient's organization. In those instances in which the required skills are not found in the recipient organization, rates shall be consistent with those paid for similar work in the labor market in which the recipient competes for the kind of services involved. In either case, paid fringe benefits that are reasonable, allowable, and allocable may be included in the valuation.

(e) When an employer other than the recipient furnishes the services of an employee, these services shall be valued at the employee's regular rate of pay (plus an amount of fringe benefits that are reasonable, allowable, and allocable, but exclusive of overhead costs), provided these services are in the same skill for which the employee is normally paid.

(f) Donated supplies may include such items as expendable equipment, office supplies, laboratory supplies or workshop and classroom supplies. Value assessed to donated supplies included in the cost sharing or matching share shall be reasonable and shall not exceed the fair market value of the property at the time of the donation.

(g) The method used for determining cost sharing or matching for donated equipment, buildings and land for which title passes to the recipient may differ according to the purpose of the award, if paragraphs (g)(1) or (g)(2) of this section apply.

(1) If the purpose of the award is to assist the recipient in the acquisition of equipment, buildings or land, the total value of the donated property may be claimed as cost sharing or matching.

(2) If the purpose of the award is to support activities that require the use of equipment, buildings or land, normally only depreciation or use charges for equipment and buildings may be made. However, the full value of equipment or other capital assets and fair rental charges for land may be allowed, provided that HUD has approved the charges.

(h) The value of donated property shall be determined in accordance with the usual accounting policies of the recipient, with the following qualifications.

(1) The value of donated land and buildings shall not exceed its fair market value at the time of donation to the recipient as established by an independent appraiser (e.g., certified real property appraiser or General Services Administration representative) and certified by a responsible official of the recipient.

(2) The value of donated equipment shall not exceed the fair market value of equipment of the same age and condition at the time of donation.

(3) The value of donated space shall not exceed the fair rental value of comparable space as established by an independent appraisal of comparable space and facilities in a privately-owned building in the same locality.

(4) The value of loaned equipment shall not exceed its fair rental value.

(5) The following requirements pertain to the recipient's supporting records for in-kind contributions from third parties.

(i) Volunteer services shall be documented and, to the extent feasible, supported by the same methods used by the recipient for its own employees.

(ii) The basis for determining the valuation for personal service, material, equipment, buildings and land shall be documented.

§ 84.24 Program Income.

(a) HUD shall apply the standards set forth in this section in requiring recipient organizations to account for program income related to projects financed in whole or in part with Federal funds.

(b) Except as provided in paragraph (h) of this section, program income earned during the project period shall be retained by the recipient and, in accordance with HUD regulations or the terms and conditions of the award, shall be used in one or more of the ways listed in the following.

(1) Added to funds committed to the project by HUD and recipient and used to further eligible project or program objectives.

(2) Used to finance the non-Federal share of the project or program.

(3) Deducted from the total project or program allowable cost in determining the net allowable costs on which the Federal share of costs is based.

(c) When HUD authorizes the disposition of program income as described in paragraphs (b)(1) or (b)(2) of this section, program income in excess of any limits stipulated shall be used in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(d) In the event that HUD does not specify in its regulations or the terms and conditions of the award how program income is to be used, paragraph (b)(3) of this section shall apply automatically to all projects or programs except research. For awards that support research, paragraph (b)(1) of this section shall apply automatically unless HUD indicates in the terms and conditions another alternative on the award or the recipient is subject to special award conditions, as indicated in §84.14.

(e) Unless HUD regulations or the terms and conditions of the award provide otherwise, recipients shall have no obligation to the Federal Government regarding program income earned after the end of the project period.

(f) If authorized by HUD regulations or the terms and conditions of the award, costs incident to the generation of program income may be deducted from gross income to determine program income, provided these costs have not been charged to the award.

(g) Proceeds from the sale of property shall be handled in accordance with the requirements of the Property Standards (See §§84.30 through 84.37).

(h) Unless HUD regulations or the terms and condition of the award provide otherwise, recipients shall have no obligation to the Federal Government with respect to program income earned from license fees and royalties for copyrighted material, patents, patent applications, trademarks, and inventions produced under an award. However, Patent and Trademark Amendments (35 U.S.C. 18) apply to inventions made under an experimental, developmental, or research award.

§ 84.25 Revision of budget and program plans.

(a) The budget plan is the financial expression of the project or program as approved during the award process. It may include either the Federal and non-Federal share, or only the Federal share, depending upon HUD requirements. It shall be related to performance for program evaluation purposes whenever appropriate.

(b) Recipients are required to report deviations from budget and program plans, and request prior approvals for budget and program plan revisions, in accordance with this section.

(c) For non-construction awards, recipients shall request prior approvals from HUD for one or more of the following program or budget related reasons.

(1) Change in the scope or the objective of the project or program (even if there is no associated budget revision requiring prior written approval).

(2) Change in a key person specified in the application or award document.

(3) The absence for more than three months, or a 25 percent reduction in time devoted to the project, by the approved project director or principal investigator.

(4) The need for additional Federal funding.

(5) The transfer of amounts budgeted for indirect costs to absorb increases in direct costs, or vice versa, if approval is required by HUD.

(6) The inclusion, unless waived by HUD, of costs that require prior approval in accordance with OMB Circular A-21, "Cost Principles for Institutions of Higher Education," OMB Circular A-122, "Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations," or 45 CFR part 74 Appendix E, "Principles for Determining Costs Applicable to Research and Development under Grants and Contracts with Hospitals," or 48 CFR part 31, "Contract Cost Principles and Procedures," as applicable.

(7) The transfer of funds allotted for training allowances (direct payment to trainees) to other categories of expense.

(8) Unless described in the application and funded in the approved awards, the subaward, transfer or contracting out of any work under an award. This provision does not apply to the purchase of supplies, material, equipment or general support services.

(d) No other prior approval requirements for specific items may be imposed unless a deviation has been approved by OMB.

(e) Except for requirements listed in paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(4) of this section, HUD is authorized, at its option, to waive cost-related and administrative prior written approvals required

by Circular A-110 and OMB Circulars A-21 and A-122. Such waivers may include authorizing recipients to do any one or more of the following.

(1) Incur pre-award costs 90 calendar days prior to award or more than 90 calendar days with the prior approval of HUD. All pre-award costs are incurred at the recipient's risk (i.e., HUD is under no obligation to reimburse such costs if for any reason the recipient does not receive an award or if the award is less than anticipated and inadequate to cover such costs).

(2) Initiate a one-time extension of the expiration date of the award of up to 12 months unless one or more of the following conditions apply. For one-time extensions, the recipient must notify HUD in writing with the supporting reasons and revised expiration date at least 10 days before the expiration date specified in the award. This one-time extension may not be exercised merely for the purpose of using unobligated balances.

(i) The terms and conditions of award prohibit the extension.

(ii) The extension requires additional Federal funds.

(iii) The extension involves any change in the approved objectives or scope of the project.

(3) Carry forward unobligated balances to subsequent funding periods.

(4) For awards that support research, unless HUD provides otherwise in HUD's regulations, the prior approval requirements described in paragraph (e) of this section are automatically waived (i.e., recipients need not obtain such prior approvals) unless one of the conditions included in paragraph (e)(2) of this section applies.

(f) HUD may, at its option, restrict the transfer of funds among direct cost categories or programs, functions and activities for awards in which the Federal share of the project exceeds \$100,000 and the cumulative amount of such transfers exceeds or is expected to exceed 10 percent of the total budget as last approved by HUD. HUD shall not permit a transfer that would cause any Federal appropriation or part thereof to be used for purposes other than those consistent with the original intent of the appropriation.

(g) All other changes to nonconstruction budgets, except for the changes described in paragraph (j) of this section, do not require prior approval.

(h) For construction awards, recipients shall request prior written approval promptly from HUD for budget revisions whenever paragraphs (h)(1), (h)(2) or (h)(3) of this section apply.

(1) The revision results from changes in the scope or the objective of the project or program.

(2) The need arises for additional Federal funds to complete the project.

(3) A revision is desired which involves specific costs for which prior written approval requirements may be imposed consistent with applicable OMB cost principles listed in §84.27.

(i) No other prior approval requirements for specific items may be imposed unless a deviation has been approved by OMB.

(j) When HUD makes an award that provides support for both construction and nonconstruction work, HUD may require the recipient to request prior approval from HUD before making any fund or budget transfers between the two types of work supported.

(k) For both construction and nonconstruction awards, HUD shall require recipients to notify HUD in writing promptly whenever the amount of Federal authorized funds is expected to exceed the needs of the recipient for the project period by more than \$5000 or five percent of the Federal award, whichever is greater. This notification shall not be required if an application for additional funding is submitted for a continuation award.

(l) When requesting approval for budget revisions, recipients shall use the budget forms that were used in the application unless HUD indicates a letter of request suffices.

(m) Within 30 calendar days from the date of receipt of the request for budget revisions, HUD shall review the request and notify the recipient whether the budget revisions have been approved. If the revision is still under consideration at the end of 30 calendar days, HUD shall inform the recipient in writing of the date when the recipient may expect the decision.

§ 84.26 Non-Federal audits.

(a) Recipients and subrecipients that are institutions of higher education or other non-profit organization (including hospitals) shall be subject to the audit requirements contained in the

Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507) and revised OMB Circular A–133, “Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations.”

(1) Non-profit organizations subject to regulations in the part 200 and part 800 series of this title which receive awards subject to part 84 shall comply with the audit requirements of revised OMB Circular A–133, “Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations.” For HUD programs, a non-profit organization is the mortgagor or owner (as these terms are defined in the regulations in the part 200 and part 800 series) and not a related or affiliated organization or entity.

(2) [Reserved]

(b) State and local governments shall be subject to the audit requirements contained in the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507) and revised OMB Circular A–133, “Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations.”

(c) For-profit hospitals not covered by the audit provisions of revised OMB Circular A–133 shall be subject to the audit requirements of the Federal awarding agencies.

(d) Commercial organizations shall be subject to the audit requirements of HUD or the prime recipient as incorporated into the award document.

[59 FR 47011, Sept. 13, 1994, as amended at 62 FR 61617, Nov. 18, 1997]

§ 84.27 Allowable costs:

For each kind of recipient, there is a set of Federal principles for determining allowable costs. Allowability of costs shall be determined in accordance with the cost principles applicable to the entity incurring the costs. Thus, allowability of costs incurred by State, local or federally-recognized Indian tribal governments is determined in accordance with the provisions of OMB Circular A–87, “Cost Principles for State and Local Governments.” The allowability of costs incurred by non-profit organizations is determined in accordance with the provisions of OMB Circular A–122, “Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations.” The allowability of costs incurred by institutions of higher education is determined in accordance with the provisions of OMB Circular A–21, “Cost Principles for Educational Institutions.” The allowability of costs incurred by hospitals is determined in accordance with the provisions of Appendix E of 45 CFR part 74, “Principles for Determining Costs Applicable to Research and Development Under Grants and Contracts with Hospitals.” The allowability of costs incurred by commercial organizations and those non-profit organizations listed in Attachment C to Circular A–122 is determined in accordance with the provisions of the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) at 48 CFR part 31.

§ 84.28 Period of availability of funds.

Where a funding period is specified, a recipient may charge to the grant only allowable costs resulting from obligations incurred during the funding period and any pre-award costs authorized by HUD.

Property Standards

§ 84.30 Purpose of property standards.

Sections 84.31 through 84.37 set forth uniform standards governing management and disposition of property furnished by the Federal Government whose cost was charged to a project supported by a Federal award. HUD shall require recipients to observe these standards under awards and shall not impose additional requirements, unless specifically required by Federal statute. The recipient may use its own property management standards and procedures provided it observes the provisions of §§84.31 through 84.37.

§ 84.31 Insurance coverage.

Recipients shall, at a minimum, provide the equivalent insurance coverage for real property and equipment acquired with Federal funds as provided to property owned by the recipient. Federally-owned property need not be insured unless required by the terms and conditions of the award.

§ 84.32 Real property.

HUD prescribes the following requirements for recipients concerning the use and disposition of real property acquired in whole or in part under awards:

- (a) Title to real property shall vest in the recipient subject to the condition that the recipient shall use the real property for the authorized purpose of the project as long as it is needed and shall not encumber the property without approval of HUD.
- (b) The recipient shall obtain written approval by HUD for the use of real property in other federally-sponsored projects when the recipient determines that the property is no longer needed for the purpose of the original project. Use in other projects shall be limited to those under federally-sponsored projects (i.e., awards) or programs that have purposes consistent with those authorized for support by HUD.
- (c) When the real property is no longer needed as provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the recipient shall request disposition instructions from HUD or its successor Federal awarding agency. HUD shall observe one or more of the following disposition instructions.
 - (1) The recipient may be permitted to retain title without further obligation to the Federal Government after it compensates the Federal Government for that percentage of the current fair market value of the property attributable to the Federal participation in the project.
 - (2) The recipient may be directed to sell the property under guidelines provided by HUD and pay the Federal Government for that percentage of the current fair market value of the property attributable to the Federal participation in the project (after deducting actual and reasonable selling and fix-up expenses, if any, from the sales proceeds). When the recipient is authorized or required to sell the property, proper sales procedures shall be established that provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.
 - (3) The recipient may be directed to transfer title to the property to the Federal Government or to an eligible third party provided that, in such cases, the recipient shall be entitled to compensation for its attributable percentage of the current fair market value of the property.

§ 84.33 Federally-owned and exempt property.

(a) Federally-owned property.

- (1) Title to federally-owned property remains vested in the Federal Government. Recipients shall submit annually an inventory listing of federally-owned property in their custody to HUD. Upon completion of the award or when the property is no longer needed, the recipient shall report the property to HUD for further HUD utilization.
- (2) If HUD has no further need for the property, it shall be declared excess and reported to the General Services Administration, unless HUD has statutory authority to dispose of the property by alternative methods (e.g., the authority provided by the Federal Technology Transfer Act (15 U.S.C. 3710 (l)) to donate research equipment to educational and non-profit organizations in accordance with E.O. 12821, "Improving Mathematics and Science Education in Support of the National Education Goals.") Appropriate instructions shall be issued to the recipient by HUD.

(b) Exempt property. When statutory authority exists, HUD has the option to vest title to property acquired with Federal funds in the recipient without further obligation to the Federal Government and under conditions HUD considers appropriate. Such property is "exempt property." Should HUD not establish conditions, title to exempt property upon acquisition shall vest in the recipient without further obligation to the Federal Government.

§ 84.34 Equipment.

(a) Title to equipment acquired by a recipient with Federal funds shall vest in the recipient, subject to conditions of this section.

(b) The recipient shall not use equipment acquired with Federal funds to provide services to non-Federal outside organizations for a fee that is less than private companies charge for equivalent services, unless specifically authorized by Federal statute, for as long as the Federal Government retains an interest in the equipment.

(c) The recipient shall use the equipment in the project or program for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by Federal funds and shall not encumber the equipment without approval of HUD. When the equipment is no longer needed for the original project or program, the recipient shall use the equipment in connection with its other federally-sponsored activities, in the following order of priority:

(1) Activities sponsored by HUD which funded the original project; then

(2) Activities sponsored by other Federal awarding agencies.

(d) During the time that equipment is used on the project or program for which it was acquired, the recipient shall make it available for use on other projects or programs if such other use will not interfere with the work on the project or program for which the equipment was originally acquired. First preference for such other use shall be given to other projects or programs sponsored by HUD that financed the equipment; second preference shall be given to projects or programs sponsored by other Federal awarding agencies. If the equipment is owned by the Federal Government, use on other activities not sponsored by the Federal Government shall be permissible if authorized by HUD. User charges shall be treated as program income.

(e) When acquiring replacement equipment, the recipient may use the equipment to be replaced as trade-in or sell the equipment and use the proceeds to offset the costs of the replacement equipment subject to the approval of HUD.

(f) The recipient's property management standards for equipment acquired with Federal funds and federally-owned equipment shall include all of the following.

(1) Equipment records shall be maintained accurately and shall include the following information.

(i) A description of the equipment.

(ii) Manufacturer's serial number, model number, Federal stock number, national stock number, or other identification number.

(iii) Source of the equipment, including the award number.

(iv) Whether title vests in the recipient or the Federal Government.

(v) Acquisition date (or date received, if the equipment was furnished by the Federal Government) and cost.

(vi) Information from which one can calculate the percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the equipment (not applicable to equipment furnished by the Federal Government).

(vii) Location and condition of the equipment and the date the information was reported.

(viii) Unit acquisition cost.

(ix) Ultimate disposition data, including date of disposal and sales price or the method used to determine current fair market value where a recipient compensates HUD for its share.

(2) Equipment owned by the Federal Government shall be identified to indicate Federal ownership.

(3) A physical inventory of equipment shall be taken and the results reconciled with the equipment records at least once every two years. Any differences between quantities determined by the physical inspection and those shown in the accounting records shall be investigated to determine the causes of the difference. The recipient shall, in connection with the inventory, verify the existence, current utilization, and continued need for the equipment.

(4) A control system shall be in effect to insure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the equipment. Any loss, damage, or theft of equipment shall be investigated and fully documented; if the equipment was owned by the Federal Government, the recipient shall promptly notify HUD.

(5) Adequate maintenance procedures shall be implemented to keep the equipment in good condition.

(6) Where the recipient is authorized or required to sell the equipment, proper sales procedures shall be established which provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

(g) When the recipient no longer needs the equipment, the equipment may be used for other activities in accordance with the following standards. For equipment with a current per unit fair market value of \$5000 or more, the recipient may retain the equipment for other uses provided that compensation is made to HUD or its successor. The amount of compensation shall be computed by applying the percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the original project or program to the current fair market value of the equipment. If the recipient has no need for the equipment, the recipient shall request disposition instructions from HUD. HUD shall determine whether the equipment can be used to meet HUD's requirements. If no requirement exists within HUD, the availability of the equipment shall be reported to the General Services Administration by HUD to determine whether a requirement for the equipment exists in other Federal agencies. HUD shall issue instructions to the recipient no later than 120 calendar days after the recipient's request and the following procedures shall govern.

(1) If so instructed or if disposition instructions are not issued within 120 calendar days after the recipient's request, the recipient shall sell the equipment and reimburse HUD an amount computed by applying to the sales proceeds the percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the original project or program. However, the recipient shall be permitted to deduct and retain from the Federal share \$500 or ten percent of the proceeds, whichever is less, for the recipient's selling and handling expenses.

(2) If the recipient is instructed to ship the equipment elsewhere, the recipient shall be reimbursed by the Federal Government by an amount which is computed by applying the percentage of the recipient's participation in the cost of the original project or program to the current fair market value of the equipment, plus any reasonable shipping or interim storage costs incurred.

(3) If the recipient is instructed to otherwise dispose of the equipment, the recipient shall be reimbursed by HUD for such costs incurred in its disposition.

(4) HUD may reserve the right to transfer the title to the Federal Government or to a third party named by the Federal Government when such third party is otherwise eligible under existing statutes. Such transfer shall be subject to the following standards.

(i) The equipment shall be appropriately identified in the award or otherwise made known to the recipient in writing.

(ii) HUD shall issue disposition instructions within 120 calendar days after receipt of a final inventory. The final inventory shall list all equipment acquired with grant funds and federally-owned equipment. If HUD fails to issue disposition instructions within the 120 calendar day period, the recipient shall apply the standards of this section, as appropriate.

(iii) When HUD exercises its right to take title, the equipment shall be subject to the provisions for federally-owned equipment.

§ 84.35 Supplies and other expendable property.

(a) Title to supplies and other expendable property shall vest in the recipient upon acquisition. If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding \$5000 in total aggregate value upon termination or completion of the project or program and the supplies are not needed for any other federally-sponsored project or program, the recipient shall retain the supplies for use on non-Federal sponsored activities or sell them, but shall, in either case, compensate the Federal Government for its share. The amount of compensation shall be computed in the same manner as for equipment.

(b) The recipient shall not use supplies acquired with Federal funds to provide services to non-Federal outside organizations for a fee that is less than private companies charge for equivalent services, unless specifically authorized by Federal statute, as long as the Federal Government retains an interest in the supplies.

§ 84.36 Intangible property.

(a) The recipient may copyright any work that is subject to copyright and was developed, or for which ownership was purchased, under an award. HUD reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive and irrevocable right to reproduce, publish, or otherwise use the work for Federal purposes, and to authorize others to do so.

(b) Recipients are subject to applicable regulations governing patents and inventions, including government-wide regulations issued by the Department of Commerce at 37 CFR part 401, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements."

(c) HUD has the right to:

- (1) Obtain, reproduce, publish or otherwise use the data first produced under an award; and
- (2) Authorize others to receive, reproduce, publish, or otherwise use such data for HUD purposes.

(d)

(1) In addition, in response to a Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) request for research data relating to published research findings produced under an award that were used by HUD in developing an agency action that has the force and effect of law, HUD shall request, and the recipient shall provide, within a reasonable time, the research data so that they can be made available to the public through the procedures established under the FOIA. If HUD obtains the research data solely in response to a FOIA request, HUD may charge the requester a reasonable fee equaling the full incremental cost of obtaining the research data. This fee should reflect costs incurred by HUD, the recipient, and applicable subrecipients. This fee is in addition to any fees HUD may assess under the FOIA (5 U.S.C. 552(a)(4)(A)).

(2) The following definitions apply for purposes of this paragraph (d):

(i) *Research data* is defined as the recorded factual material commonly accepted in the scientific community as necessary to validate research findings, but not any of the following: preliminary analyses, drafts of scientific papers, plans for future research, peer reviews, or communications with colleagues. This "recorded" material excludes physical objects (e.g., laboratory samples). *Research data* also do not include:

- (A) Trade secrets, commercial information, materials necessary to be held confidential by a researcher until they are published, or similar information which is protected under law; and
- (B) Personnel and medical information and similar information the disclosure of which would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy, such as information that could be used to identify a particular person in a research study.

(ii) *Published* is defined as either when:

- (A) Research findings are published in a peer-reviewed scientific or technical journal; or
- (B) HUD publicly and officially cites the research findings in support of an agency action that has the force and effect of law.

(iii) *Used by HUD in developing an agency action that has the force and effect of law* is defined as when HUD publicly and officially cites the research findings in support of an agency action that has the force and effect of law.

(e) Title to intangible property and debt instruments acquired under an award or sub-award vests upon acquisition in the recipient. The recipient shall use that property for the originally-authorized purpose, and the recipient shall not encumber the property without approval of HUD. When no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, disposition of the intangible property shall occur in accordance with the provisions of §84.34(g).

[59 FR 47011, Sept. 13, 1994, as amended at 65 FR 30499, May 11, 2000]

§ 84.37 Property trust relationship.

Real property, equipment, intangible property and debt instruments that are acquired or improved with Federal funds shall be held in trust by the recipient as trustee for the beneficiaries of the project or program under which the property was acquired or improved. HUD may require recipients to record liens or other appropriate notices of record to indicate that personal or real

property has been acquired or improved with Federal funds and that use and disposition conditions apply to the property.

Procurement Standards

§ 84.40 Purpose of procurement standards.

Sections 84.41 through 84.48 set forth standards for use by recipients in establishing procedures for the procurement of supplies and other expendable property, equipment, real property and other services with Federal funds. These standards are furnished to ensure that such materials and services are obtained in an effective manner and in compliance with the provisions of applicable Federal statutes and executive orders. No additional procurement standards or requirements shall be imposed by HUD upon recipients, unless specifically required by Federal statute or executive order or approved by OMB.

§ 84.41 Recipient responsibilities.

The standards contained in this section do not relieve the recipient of the contractual responsibilities arising under its contract(s). The recipient is the responsible authority, without recourse to HUD, regarding the settlement and satisfaction of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements entered into in support of an award or other agreement. This includes disputes, claims, protests of award, source evaluation or other matters of a contractual nature. Matters concerning violation of statute are to be referred to such Federal, State or local authority as may have proper jurisdiction.

§ 84.42 Codes of conduct.

The recipient shall maintain written standards of conduct governing the performance of its employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer, or agent shall participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a real or apparent conflict of interest would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any member of his or her immediate family, his or her partner, or an organization which employs or is about to employ any of the parties indicated herein, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for an award. The officers, employees, and agents of the recipient shall neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors, or anything of monetary value from contractors, or parties to sub-agreements. However, recipients may set standards for situations in which the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal value. The standards of conduct shall provide for disciplinary actions to be applied for violations of such standards by officers, employees, or agents of the recipient.

§ 84.43 Competition.

All procurement transactions shall be conducted in a manner to provide, to the maximum extent practical, open and free competition. The recipient shall be alert to organizational conflicts of interest as well as noncompetitive practices among contractors that may restrict or eliminate competition or otherwise restrain trade. In order to ensure objective contractor performance and eliminate unfair competitive advantage, contractors that develop or draft specifications, requirements, statements of work, invitations for bids and/or requests for proposals shall be excluded from competing for such procurements. Awards shall be made to the bidder or offeror whose bid or offer is responsive to the solicitation and is most advantageous to the recipient, price, quality and other factors considered. The other factors shall include the bidder's or offeror's compliance with Section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968 (12 U.S.C. 1701u), hereafter referred to as "Section 3." Section 3 provides that, to the greatest extent feasible, and consistent with existing Federal, State, and local laws, and regulations, economic opportunities generated by certain HUD financial assistance shall be directed to low- and very

low-income persons. Solicitations shall clearly set forth all requirements that the bidder or offeror shall fulfill in order for the bid or offer to be evaluated by the recipient. Any and all bids or offers may be rejected when it is in the recipient's interest to do so.

§ 84.44 Procurement procedures.

(a) All recipients shall establish written procurement procedures. These procedures shall provide for, at a minimum, that paragraphs (a)(1), (a)(2) and (a)(3) of this section apply.

(1) Recipients avoid purchasing unnecessary items.

(2) Where appropriate, an analysis is made of lease and purchase alternatives to determine which would be the most economical and practical procurement for the Federal Government.

(3) Solicitations for goods and services provide for all of the following.

(i) A clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product or service to be procured. In competitive procurements, such a description shall not contain features which unduly restrict competition.

(ii) Requirements which the bidder/offeror must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(iii) A description, whenever practicable, of technical requirements in terms of functions to be performed or performance required, including the range of acceptable characteristics or minimum acceptable standards.

(iv) The specific features of "brand name or equal" descriptions that bidders are required to meet when such items are included in the solicitation.

(v) The acceptance, to the extent practicable and economically feasible, of products and services dimensioned in the metric system of measurement.

(vi) Preference, to the extent practicable and economically feasible, for products and services that conserve natural resources and protect the environment and are energy efficient.

(b) Positive efforts shall be made by recipients to utilize small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises, whenever possible. Recipients of Federal awards shall take all of the following steps to further this goal.

(1) Ensure that small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises are used to the fullest extent practicable.

(2) Make information on forthcoming opportunities available and arrange time frames for purchases and contracts to encourage and facilitate participation by small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises.

(3) Consider in the contract process whether firms competing for larger contracts intend to subcontract with small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises.

(4) Encourage contracting with consortiums of small businesses, minority-owned firms and women's business enterprises when a contract is too large for one of these firms to handle individually.

(5) Use the services and assistance, as appropriate, of such organizations as the Small Business Administration and the Department of Commerce's Minority Business Development Agency in the solicitation and utilization of small businesses, minority-owned firms and women's business enterprises.

(c) The type of procuring instruments used (e.g., fixed price contracts, cost reimbursable contracts, purchase orders, and incentive contracts) shall be determined by the recipient but shall be appropriate for the particular procurement and for promoting the best interest of the program or project involved. The "cost-plus-a-percentage-of-cost" or "percentage of construction cost" methods of contracting shall not be used.

(d) Contracts shall be made only with responsible contractors who possess the potential ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of the proposed procurement. Consideration shall be given to such matters as contractor integrity; compliance with public policy, including, where applicable, Section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968 (12 U.S.C. 1701u); record of past performance; financial and technical resources or accessibility to other necessary resources. In certain circumstances, contracts with certain parties are restricted by implementation of E.O.s 12549 and 12689, "Debarment and Suspension," at 24 CFR part 24.

(e) Recipients shall, on request, make available for the Federal awarding agency, pre-award review and procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, independent cost estimates, etc., when any of the following conditions apply.

- (1) A recipient's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in HUD's implementation of Circular A-110.
- (2) The procurement is expected to exceed \$100,000 or the small purchase threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403 (11), whichever is greater, and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation.
- (3) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the small purchase threshold, specifies a "brand name" product.
- (4) The proposed award over the small purchase threshold is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement.
- (5) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the amount of the small purchase threshold.

§ 84.45 Cost and price analysis.

Some form of cost or price analysis shall be made and documented in the procurement files in connection with every procurement action. Price analysis may be accomplished in various ways, including the comparison of price quotations submitted, market prices and similar indicia, together with discounts. Cost analysis is the review and evaluation of each element of cost to determine reasonableness, allocability and allowability.

§ 84.46 Procurement records.

Procurement records and files for purchases in excess of the small purchase threshold shall include the following at a minimum:

- (a) Basis for contractor selection;
- (b) Justification for lack of competition when competitive bids or offers are not obtained; and
- (c) Basis for award cost or price.

§ 84.47 Contract administration.

A system for contract administration shall be maintained to ensure contractor conformance with the terms, conditions and specifications of the contract and to ensure adequate and timely follow up of all purchases. Recipients shall evaluate contractor performance and document, as appropriate, whether contractors have met the terms, conditions and specifications of the contract.

§ 84.48 Contract provisions.

The recipient shall include, in addition to provisions to define a sound and complete agreement, the following provisions in all contracts. The following provisions shall also be applied to subcontracts.

- (a) Contracts in excess of the small purchase threshold shall contain contractual provisions or conditions that allow for administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances in which a contractor violates or breaches the contract terms, and provide for such remedial actions as may be appropriate.
- (b) All contracts in excess of the small purchase threshold shall contain suitable provisions for termination by the recipient, including the manner by which termination shall be effected and the basis for settlement. In addition, such contracts shall describe conditions under which the contract may be terminated for default as well as conditions where the contract may be terminated because of circumstances beyond the control of the contractor.
- (c) Except as otherwise required by statute, an award that requires the contracting (or subcontracting) for construction or facility improvements shall provide for the recipient to follow its

own requirements relating to bid guarantees, performance bonds, and payment bonds unless the construction contract or subcontract exceeds \$100,000. For those contracts or subcontracts exceeding \$100,000, HUD may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the recipient, provided HUD has made a determination that the Federal Government's interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements shall be as follows:

(1) A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price. The "bid guarantee" shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder shall, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(2) A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A "performance bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(3) A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A "payment bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by statute of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

(4) Where bonds are required in the situations described herein, the bonds shall be obtained from companies holding certificates of authority as acceptable sureties pursuant to 31 CFR part 223, "Surety Companies Doing Business with the United States."

(d) All negotiated contracts (except those for less than the small purchase threshold) awarded by recipients shall include a provision to the effect that the recipient, HUD, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives, shall have access to any books, documents, papers and records of the contractor which are directly pertinent to a specific program for the purpose of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions.

(e) All contracts, including small purchases, awarded by recipients and their contractors shall contain the procurement provisions of Appendix A to this rule, as applicable.

Reports and Records

§ 84.50 Purpose of reports and records.

Sections 84.51 through 84.53 set forth the procedures for monitoring and reporting on the recipient's financial and program performance and the necessary standard reporting forms. They also set forth record retention requirements.

§ 84.51 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

(a) Recipients are responsible for managing and monitoring each project, program, subaward, function or activity supported by the award. Recipients shall monitor subawards to ensure subrecipients have met the audit requirements as delineated in §84.26.

(b) HUD shall prescribe the frequency with which the performance reports shall be submitted. Except as provided in §84.51(f), performance reports shall not be required more frequently than quarterly or less frequently than annually. Annual reports shall be due 90 calendar days after the grant year; quarterly or semi-annual reports shall be due 30 days after the reporting period. HUD may require annual reports before the anniversary dates of multiple year awards in lieu of these requirements. The final performance reports are due 90 calendar days after the expiration or termination of the award.

(c) If inappropriate, a final technical or performance report shall not be required after completion of the project.

(d) When required, performance reports shall generally contain, for each award, brief information on each of the following:

(1) A comparison of actual accomplishments with the goals and objectives established for the period, the findings of the investigator, or both. Whenever appropriate and the output of

programs or projects can be readily quantified, such quantitative data should be related to cost data for computation of unit costs.

(2) Reasons why established goals were not met, if appropriate.

(3) Other pertinent information including, when appropriate, analysis and explanation of cost overruns or high unit costs.

(e) Recipients shall not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of performance reports.

(f) Recipients shall immediately notify HUD of developments that have a significant impact on the award-supported activities. Also, notification shall be given in the case of problems, delays, or adverse conditions which materially impair the ability to meet the objectives of the award. This notification shall include a statement of the action taken or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(g) HUD may make site visits, as needed.

(h) HUD shall comply with clearance requirements of 5 CFR part 1320 when requesting performance data from recipients.

§ 84.52 Financial reporting.

(a) The following forms or such other forms as may be approved by OMB are authorized for obtaining financial information from recipients.

(1) SF-269 or SF-269A, Financial Status Report.

(i) HUD requires recipients to use the SF-269 or SF-269A to report the status of funds for all nonconstruction projects or programs. HUD has the option of not requiring the SF-269 or SF-269A when the SF-270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement, or SF-272, Report of Federal Cash Transactions, is determined to provide adequate information to meet its needs, except that a final SF-269 or SF-269A shall be required at the completion of the project when the SF-270 is used only for advances.

(ii) HUD shall prescribe whether the report shall be on a cash or accrual basis. If HUD requires accrual information and the recipient's accounting records are not normally kept on the accrual basis, the recipient shall not be required to convert its accounting system, but shall develop such accrual information through best estimates based on an analysis of the documentation on hand.

(iii) HUD shall determine the frequency of the Financial Status Report for each project or program, considering the size and complexity of the particular project or program. However, the report shall not be required more frequently than quarterly or less frequently than annually. A final report shall be required at the completion of the agreement.

(iv) HUD requires recipients to submit the SF-269 or SF-269A (an original and no more than two copies) no later than 30 days after the end of each specified reporting period for quarterly and semi-annual reports, and 90 calendar days for annual and final reports. Extensions of reporting due dates may be approved by HUD upon request of the recipient.

(2) SF-272, Report of Federal Cash Transactions.

(i) When funds are advanced to recipients HUD shall require each recipient to submit the SF-272 and, when necessary, its continuation sheet, SF-272a. HUD shall use this report to monitor cash advanced to recipients and to obtain disbursement information for each agreement with the recipients.

(ii) HUD may require forecasts of Federal cash requirements in the "Remarks" section of the report.

(iii) When practical and deemed necessary, HUD may require recipients to report in the "Remarks" section the amount of cash advances received and retained in excess of three days. Recipients shall provide short narrative explanations of actions taken to reduce the excess balances.

(iv) Recipients shall be required to submit not more than the original and two copies of the SF-272 15 calendar days following the end of each quarter. HUD may require a

monthly report from those recipients receiving advances totaling \$1 million or more per year.

(v) HUD may waive the requirement for submission of the SF-272 for any one of the following reasons:

(A) When monthly advances do not exceed \$25,000 per recipient, provided that such advances are monitored through other forms contained in this section;

(B) If, in HUD's opinion, the recipient's accounting controls are adequate to minimize excessive Federal advances; or

(C) When the electronic payment mechanisms provide adequate data.

(b) When HUD needs additional information or more frequent reports, the following shall be observed.

(1) When additional information is needed to comply with legislative requirements, HUD shall issue instructions to require recipients to submit such information under the "Remarks" section of the reports.

(2) When HUD determines that a recipient's accounting system does not meet the standards in §84.21, additional pertinent information to further monitor awards may be obtained upon written notice to the recipient until such time as the system is brought up to standard. HUD, in obtaining this information, shall comply with report clearance requirements of 5 CFR part 1320.

(3) HUD will shade out any line item on any report if not necessary.

(4) HUD may accept the identical information from the recipients in machine readable format or computer printouts or electronic outputs in lieu of prescribed formats.

(5) HUD may provide computer or electronic outputs to recipients when such expedites or contributes to the accuracy of reporting.

§ 84.53 Retention and access requirements for records.

(a) This section sets forth requirements for record retention and access to records for awards to recipients. HUD shall not impose any other record retention or access requirements upon recipients.

(b) Financial records, supporting documents, statistical records, and all other records pertinent to an award shall be retained for a period of three years from the date of submission of the final expenditure report or, for awards that are renewed quarterly or annually, from the date of the submission of the quarterly or annual financial report, as authorized by HUD. The only exceptions are the following.

(1) If any litigation, claim, or audit is started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records shall be retained until all litigation, claims or audit findings involving the records have been resolved and final action taken.

(2) Records for real property and equipment acquired with Federal funds shall be retained for 3 years after final disposition.

(3) When records are transferred to or maintained by HUD, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the recipient.

(4) Indirect cost rate proposals, cost allocation plans, etc. as specified in §84.53(g).

(c) Copies of original records may be substituted for the original records if authorized by HUD.

(d) HUD shall request transfer of certain records to its custody from recipients when it determines that the records possess long term retention value. However, in order to avoid duplicate recordkeeping, HUD may make arrangements for recipients to retain any records that are continuously needed for joint use.

(e) HUD, the Inspector General, Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives, have the right of timely and unrestricted access to any books, documents, papers, or other records of recipients that are pertinent to the awards, in order to make audits, examinations, excerpts, transcripts and copies of such documents. This right also includes timely and reasonable access to a recipient's personnel for the purpose of interview and discussion related to such documents. The rights of access in this paragraph (e) are not limited to the required retention period, but shall last as long as records are retained.

(f) Unless required by statute, HUD shall not place restrictions on recipients that limit public access to the records of recipients that are pertinent to an award, except when HUD can demonstrate that such records shall be kept confidential and would have been exempted from disclosure pursuant to the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if the records had belonged to HUD.

(g) *Indirect cost rate proposals, cost allocation plans, etc.* Paragraphs (g)(1) and (g)(2) of this section apply to the following types of documents, and their supporting records—indirect cost rate computations or proposals, cost allocation plans, and any similar accounting computations of the rate at which a particular group of costs is chargeable (such as computer usage chargeback rates or composite fringe benefit rates).

(1) *If submitted for negotiation.* If the recipient submits to HUD or the subrecipient submits to the recipient the proposal, plan, or other computation to form the basis for negotiation of the rate, then the 3-year retention period for its supporting records starts on the date of such submission.

(2) *If not submitted for negotiation.* If the recipient is not required to submit to HUD or the subrecipient is not required to submit to the recipient the proposal, plan, or other computation for negotiation purposes, then the 3-year retention period for the proposal, plan, or other computation and its supporting records starts at the end of the fiscal year (or other accounting period) covered by the proposal, plan, or other computation.

Termination and Enforcement

§ 84.60 Purpose of termination and enforcement.

Sections 84.61 and 84.62 set forth uniform suspension, termination and enforcement procedures.

§ 84.61 Termination.

(a) Awards may be terminated in whole or in part only if paragraphs (a)(1), (a)(2) or (a)(3) of this section apply.

(1) By HUD, if a recipient materially fails to comply with the terms and conditions of an award.

(2) By HUD with the consent of the recipient, in which case the two parties shall agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated.

(3) By the recipient upon sending to HUD written notification setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if HUD determines in the case of partial termination that the reduced or modified portion of the grant will not accomplish the purposes for which the grant was made, it may terminate the grant in its entirety under either paragraphs (a)(1) or (a)(2) of this section.

(b) If costs are allowed under an award, the responsibilities of the recipient referred to in §84.71(a), including those for property management as applicable, shall be considered in the termination of the award, and provision shall be made for continuing responsibilities of the recipient after termination, as appropriate.

§ 84.62 Enforcement.

(a) *Remedies for noncompliance.* If a recipient materially fails to comply with the terms and conditions of an award, whether stated in a Federal statute, regulation, assurance, application, or notice of award, HUD may, in addition to imposing any of the special conditions outlined in §84.14, take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances.

(1) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the recipient or more severe enforcement action by HUD.

(2) Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and any applicable matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance.

- (3) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the current award.
 - (4) Withhold further awards for the project or program.
 - (5) Take other remedies that may be legally available.
- (b) *Hearings and appeals.* In taking an enforcement action, HUD shall provide the recipient an opportunity for hearing, appeal, or other administrative proceeding to which the recipient is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.
- (c) *Effects of suspension and termination.* Costs of a recipient resulting from obligations incurred by the recipient during a suspension or after termination of an award are not allowable unless HUD expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. Other recipient costs during suspension or after termination which are necessary and not reasonably avoidable are allowable if paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section apply.
- (1) The costs result from obligations which were properly incurred by the recipient before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it, and in the case of a termination, are noncancellable.
 - (2) The costs would be allowable if the award were not suspended or expired normally at the end of the funding period in which the termination takes effect.
- (d) *Relationship to debarment and suspension.* The enforcement remedies identified in this section, including suspension and termination, do not preclude a recipient from being subject to debarment and suspension under E.O.s 12549 and 12689 and HUD's implementing regulations at 24 CFR part 24 (see §84.13).

Subpart D—After-the-Award Requirements

§ 84.70 Purpose.

Sections 84.71 through 84.73 contain closeout procedures and other procedures for subsequent disallowances and adjustments.

§ 84.71 Closeout procedures.

- (a) Recipients shall submit, within 90 calendar days after the date of completion of the award, all financial, performance, and other reports as required by the terms and conditions of the award. HUD may approve extensions when requested by the recipient.
- (b) Unless HUD authorizes an extension, a recipient shall liquidate all obligations incurred under the award not later than 90 calendar days after the funding period or the date of completion as specified in the terms and conditions of the award or in HUD instructions.
- (c) HUD shall make prompt payments to a recipient for allowable reimbursable costs under the award being closed out.
- (d) The recipient shall promptly refund any balances of unobligated cash that HUD has advanced or paid and that is not authorized to be retained by the recipient for use in other projects. OMB Circular A-129 governs unreturned amounts that become delinquent debts.
- (e) When authorized by the terms and conditions of the award, HUD shall make a settlement for any upward or downward adjustments to the Federal share of costs after closeout reports are received.
- (f) The recipient shall account for any real and personal property acquired with Federal funds or received from the Federal Government in accordance with §§84.31 through 84.37.
- (g) In the event a final audit has not been performed prior to the closeout of an award, HUD shall retain the right to recover an appropriate amount after fully considering the recommendations on disallowed costs resulting from the final audit.

§ 84.72 Subsequent adjustments and continuing responsibilities.

- (a) The closeout of an award does not affect any of the following.
 - (1) The right of HUD to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review.

- (2) The obligation of the recipient to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions.
 - (3) Audit requirements in §84.26.
 - (4) Property management requirements in §§84.31 through 84.37.
 - (5) Records retention as required in §84.53.
- (b) After closeout of an award, a relationship created under an award may be modified or ended in whole or in part with the consent of HUD and the recipient, provided the responsibilities of the recipient referred to in §84.73(a), including those for property management as applicable, are considered and provisions made for continuing responsibilities of the recipient, as appropriate.

§ 84.73 Collection of amounts due.

- (a) Any funds paid to a recipient in excess of the amount to which the recipient is finally determined to be entitled under the terms and conditions of the award constitute a debt to the Federal Government. If not paid within a reasonable period after the demand for payment, HUD may reduce the debt by paragraphs (a)(1), (a)(2) or (a)(3) of this section.
- (1) Making an administrative offset against other requests for reimbursements.
 - (2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the recipient.
 - (3) Taking other action permitted by statute.
- (b) Except as otherwise provided by law, HUD shall charge interest on an overdue debt in accordance with 4 CFR Chapter II, "Federal Claims Collection Standards."

Subpart E—Use of Lump Sum Grants

§ 84.80 Conditions for use of Lump Sum (fixed price or fixed amount) grants.

- (a) Heads of awarding activities (HAAs) shall determine and publish the funding arrangement for award programs having a published program regulation or Notice of Funding Availability. For other awards, discretion may be provided to Grant Officers to determine the funding arrangement on a transaction basis. In such cases, Grant Officers shall document the basis for selection of the funding arrangement in the negotiation record. Appropriate consideration to fixed amount (lump sum) awards shall be made if one or more of the following conditions are present:
- (1) The HUD funding amount is definitely less than the total actual cost of the project.
 - (2) The HUD funding amount does not exceed \$100,000 or the small purchase threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403 (11), whichever is greater.
 - (3) The project scope is very specific and adequate cost, historical, or unit pricing data is available to establish a fixed amount award with assurance that the recipient will realize no increment above actual cost.
- (b) [Reserved].

§ 84.81 Definition.

- (a) A lump sum award is an award for a predetermined amount, as set forth in the grant agreement, which amount does not vary with the amount of the recipient's actual incurred costs. Under this type of award, HUD does not pay the recipient for its incurred costs but rather for completing certain defined events in the work or achievement of some other well-defined milestone. Some of the ways in which the grant amount may be paid are, but are not limited to:
- (1) In several partial payments, the amount of each agreed upon in advance, and the "milestone" or event triggering the payment also agreed upon in advance, and set forth in the grant;
 - (2) On a unit price basis, for a defined unit or units (such as a housing counseling unit), at a defined price or prices, agreed to in advance of performance of the grant and set forth in the grant; or,
 - (3) In one payment at grant completion.

(b) The key distinction between a lump sum and a cost reimbursement grant is the lack of a direct relationship between the costs incurred by the recipient and the amount paid by HUD in the lump sum arrangement.

§ 84.82 Provisions applicable only to lump sum grants.

In addition to the provisions of this subpart E, subparts A and B of this part apply to lump sum grants.

(a) *Financial and program management.* Paragraphs (b) through (e) of this section prescribe standards for financial management systems, methods for making payments, budget revision approvals, and making audits.

(b) *Standards for financial management systems.*

(1) Records that identify adequately the source and application of funds for federally-sponsored activities are required. These records shall contain information pertaining to Federal awards, authorizations, obligations, unobligated balances, assets, outlays, income and interest.

(2) Effective control over and accountability for all funds, property and other assets are required. Recipients shall adequately safeguard all such assets and assure they are used solely for authorized purposes.

(3) Comparison of outlays with budget amounts for each award is required. Whenever appropriate, financial information should be related to performance and unit cost data.

(4) Where HUD guarantees or insures the repayment of money borrowed by the recipient, HUD, at its discretion, may require adequate bonding and insurance if the bonding and insurance requirements of the recipient are not deemed adequate to protect the interest of the Federal Government.

(5) HUD may require adequate fidelity bond coverage where the recipient lacks sufficient coverage to protect the Federal Government's interest.

(6) Where bonds are required in the situations described above, the bonds shall be obtained from companies holding certificates of authority as acceptable sureties, as prescribed in 31 CFR part 223, "Surety Companies Doing Business with the United States."

(c) *Payment.*

(1) The standard governing the use of banks and other institutions as depositories of funds advanced under awards is, HUD shall not require separate depository accounts for funds provided to a recipient or establish any eligibility requirements for depositories for funds provided to a recipient. However, recipients must be able to account for the receipt, obligation and expenditure of funds.

(2) Consistent with the national goal of expanding the opportunities for women-owned and minority-owned business enterprises, recipients shall be encouraged to use women-owned and minority-owned banks (a bank which is owned at least 50 percent by women or minority group members).

(3) Except as noted elsewhere in this part, only the following forms shall be authorized for the recipients in requesting payments. HUD shall not require more than an original and two copies of these forms.

(i) *SF-270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement.* HUD has adopted the SF-270 as a standard form for all non-construction programs when electronic funds transfer or predetermined advance methods are not used. The SF-270 shall also be used for lump sum payment requests. HUD, however, has the option of using this form for construction programs in lieu of the SF-271, "Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs."

(ii) *SF-271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs.* HUD has adopted the SF-271 as the standard form to be used for requesting reimbursement for construction programs. However, HUD may substitute the SF-270 when HUD determines that it provides adequate information to meet HUD's needs.

(d) *Revision of budget and program plans.*

(1) The budget plan is the financial expression of the project or program as approved during the award process. It may include either the Federal and non-Federal share, or only the

Federal share, depending upon HUD requirements. It shall be related to performance for program evaluation purposes whenever appropriate.

- (2) Recipients are required to report deviations from program plans, and request prior approvals for budget and program plan revisions, in accordance with this section.
- (3) For non-construction awards, recipients shall request prior approvals from HUD for one or more of the following program or budget related reasons.

- (i) Change in the scope or the objective of the project or program (even if there is no associated budget revision requiring prior written approval).
- (ii) The need for additional Federal funding.
- (iii) Unless described in the application and funded in the approved awards, the subaward, transfer or contracting out of any work under an award. This provision does not apply to the purchase of supplies, material, equipment or general support services.

- (4) No other prior approval requirements for specific items may be imposed unless a deviation has been approved by OMB.

(5) Except for requirements listed in paragraphs (d)(3)(i) and (d)(3)(ii) of this section, HUD is authorized, at its option, to waive cost-related and administrative prior written approvals required by Circular A-110 and OMB Circulars A-21 and A-122. Such waivers may include authorizing recipients to do any one or more of the following.

- (i) Initiate a one-time extension of the expiration date of the award of up to 12 months unless one or more of the following conditions apply. For one-time extensions, the recipient must notify HUD in writing with the supporting reasons and revised expiration date at least 10 days before the expiration date specified in the award. This action may be taken unless:

- (A) The terms and conditions of award prohibit the extension.
- (B) The extension requires additional Federal funds.
- (C) The extension involves any change in the approved objectives or scope of the project.

- (6) For construction awards, recipients shall request prior written approval promptly from HUD for budget revisions whenever paragraphs (d)(6)(i) or (d)(6)(ii) of this section apply.

- (i) The revision results from changes in the scope or the objective of the project or program.
- (ii) The need arises for additional Federal funds to complete the project.

- (7) No other prior approval requirements for specific items may be imposed unless a deviation has been approved by OMB.

(8) When HUD makes an award that provides support for both construction and nonconstruction work, HUD may require the recipient to request prior approval from HUD before making any fund or budget transfers between the two types of work supported.

(e) *Non-Federal audits.*

(1) Recipients and subrecipients that are institutions of higher education or other non-profit organizations (including hospitals) shall be subject to the audit requirements contained in the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501-7507) and revised OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations."

- (i) Non-profit organizations subject to regulations in the part 200 and part 800 series of this title which receive awards subject to part 84 shall comply with the audit requirements of revised OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations." For HUD programs, a non-profit organization is the mortgagor or owner (as these terms are defined in the regulations in the part 200 and part 800 series) and not a related or affiliated organization or entity.

- (ii) [Reserved]

(2) State and local governments shall be subject to the audit requirements contained in the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501-7507) and revised OMB Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations."

(3) For-profit hospitals not covered by the audit provisions of revised OMB Circular A-133 shall be subject to the audit requirements of the Federal awarding agencies.

(4) Commercial organizations shall be subject to the audit requirements of HUD or the prime recipient as incorporated into the award document.

§ 84.83 Property standards.

(a) *Purpose of property standards.* Paragraphs (b) through (g) of this section set forth uniform standards governing management and disposition of property furnished by the Federal Government whose cost was charged to a project supported by a Federal award. HUD shall require recipients to observe these standards under awards and shall not impose additional requirements, unless specifically required by Federal statute. The recipient may use its own property management standards and procedures provided it observes the provisions of paragraphs (b) through (g) of this section.

(b) *Insurance coverage.* Recipients shall, at a minimum, provide the equivalent insurance coverage for real property and equipment acquired with Federal funds as provided to property owned by the recipient. Federally-owned property need not be insured unless required by the terms and conditions of the award.

(c) *Real property.* HUD prescribes the following requirements for recipients concerning the use and disposition of real property acquired in whole or in part under awards:

(1) Title to real property shall vest in the recipient subject to the condition that the recipient shall use the real property for the authorized purpose of the project as long as it is needed and shall not encumber the property without approval of HUD.

(2) The recipient shall obtain written approval by HUD for the use of real property in other federally-sponsored projects when the recipient determines that the property is no longer needed for the purpose of the original project. Use in other projects shall be limited to those under federally-sponsored projects (i.e., awards) or programs that have purposes consistent with those authorized for support by HUD.

(d) *Federally-owned and exempt property—*

(1) *Federally-owned property—*

(i) *Title to federally-owned property remains vested in the Federal Government.*

Recipients shall submit annually an inventory listing of federally-owned property in their custody to HUD. Upon completion of the award or when the property is no longer needed, the recipient shall report the property to HUD for further HUD utilization.

(ii) If HUD has no further need for the property, it shall be declared excess and reported to the General Services Administration, unless HUD has statutory authority to dispose of the property by alternative methods (e.g., the authority provided by the Federal Technology Transfer Act (15 U.S.C. 3710 (I)) to donate research equipment to educational and non-profit organizations in accordance with E.O. 12821, "Improving Mathematics and Science Education in Support of the National Education Goals.") Appropriate instructions shall be issued to the recipient by HUD.

(2) *Exempt property.* When statutory authority exists, HUD has the option to vest title to property acquired with Federal funds in the recipient without further obligation to the Federal Government and under conditions HUD considers appropriate. Such property is "exempt property." Should HUD not establish conditions, title to exempt property upon acquisition shall vest in the recipient without further obligation to the Federal Government.

(e) *Equipment.*

(1) Title to equipment acquired by a recipient with Federal funds shall vest in the recipient, subject to conditions of this section.

(2) The recipient shall use the equipment in the project or program for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by Federal funds and shall not encumber the equipment without approval of HUD. When the equipment is no longer needed for the original project or program, the recipient shall use the equipment in connection with its other federally-sponsored activities, in the following order of priority:

(i) Activities sponsored by HUD which funded the original project; then

(ii) Activities sponsored by other Federal awarding agencies.

(3) During the time that equipment is used on the project or program for which it was acquired, the recipient shall make it available for use on other projects or programs if such other use will not interfere with the work on the project or program for which the equipment was originally acquired. First preference for such other use shall be given to other projects or

programs sponsored by HUD that financed the equipment; second preference shall be given to projects or programs sponsored by other Federal awarding agencies. If the equipment is owned by the Federal Government, use on other activities not sponsored by the Federal Government shall be permissible if authorized by HUD.

(4) The recipient's property management standards for equipment acquired with Federal funds and federally-owned equipment shall include all of the following.

(i) Equipment records shall be maintained accurately and shall include the following information.

(A) A description of the equipment.

(B) Manufacturer's serial number, model number, Federal stock number, national stock number, or other identification number.

(C) Source of the equipment, including the award number.

(D) Whether title vests in the recipient or the Federal Government.

(E) Acquisition date (or date received, if the equipment was furnished by the Federal Government) and cost.

(F) Location and condition of the equipment and the date the information was reported.

(ii) Equipment owned by the Federal Government shall be identified to indicate Federal ownership.

(iii) A physical inventory of equipment shall be taken and the results reconciled with the equipment records at least once every two years. Any differences between quantities determined by the physical inspection and those shown in the accounting records shall be investigated to determine the causes of the difference. The recipient shall, in connection with the inventory, verify the existence, current utilization, and continued need for the equipment.

(iv) A control system shall be in effect to insure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the equipment. Any loss, damage, or theft of equipment shall be investigated and fully documented; if the equipment was owned by the Federal Government, the recipient shall promptly notify HUD.

(v) Adequate maintenance procedures shall be implemented to keep the equipment in good condition.

(5) HUD may reserve the right to transfer the title to the Federal Government or to a third party named by the Federal Government when such third party is otherwise eligible under existing statutes. Such transfer shall be subject to the following standards.

(i) The equipment shall be appropriately identified in the award or otherwise made known to the recipient in writing.

(ii) HUD shall issue disposition instructions within 120 calendar days after receipt of a final inventory. The final inventory shall list all equipment acquired with grant funds and federally-owned equipment. If HUD fails to issue disposition instructions within the 120 calendar day period, the recipient shall apply the standards of this section, as appropriate.

(iii) When HUD exercises its right to take title, the equipment shall be subject to the provisions for federally-owned equipment.

(f) *Intangible property.*

(1) The recipient may copyright any work that is subject to copyright and was developed, or for which ownership was purchased, under an award. HUD reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive and irrevocable right to reproduce, publish, or otherwise use the work for Federal purposes, and to authorize others to do so.

(2) Recipients are subject to applicable regulations governing patents and inventions, including government-wide regulations issued by the Department of Commerce at 37 CFR part 401, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements."

(3) Unless waived by HUD, the Federal Government has the right to paragraphs (f)(3)(i) and (f)(3)(ii) of this section.

(i) Obtain, reproduce, publish or otherwise use the data first produced under an award.

(ii) Authorize others to receive, reproduce, publish, or otherwise use such data for Federal purposes.

(4) Title to intangible property and debt instruments acquired under an award or subaward vests upon acquisition in the recipient. The recipient shall use that property for the originally-authorized purpose.

(g) *Property trust relationship.* Real property, equipment, intangible property and debt instruments that are acquired or improved with Federal funds shall be held in trust by the recipient as trustee for the beneficiaries of the project or program under which the property was acquired or improved. HUD may require recipients to record liens or other appropriate notices of record to indicate that personal or real property has been acquired or improved with Federal funds and that use and disposition conditions apply to the property.

§ 84.84 Procurement standards.

(a) *Purpose of procurement standards.* Paragraphs (b) through (i) of this section set forth standards for use by recipients in establishing procedures for the procurement of supplies and other expendable property, equipment, real property and other services with Federal funds. These standards are furnished to ensure that such materials and services are obtained in an effective manner and in compliance with the provisions of applicable Federal statutes and executive orders. No additional procurement standards or requirements shall be imposed by HUD upon recipients, unless specifically required by Federal statute or executive order or approved by OMB.

(b) *Recipient responsibilities.* The standards contained in this section do not relieve the recipient of the contractual responsibilities arising under its contract(s). The recipient is the responsible authority, without recourse to HUD, regarding the settlement and satisfaction of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements entered into in support of an award or other agreement. This includes disputes, claims, protests of award, source evaluation or other matters of a contractual nature. Matters concerning violation of statute are to be referred to such Federal, State or local authority as may have proper jurisdiction.

(c) *Codes of conduct.* The recipient shall maintain written standards of conduct governing the performance of its employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer, or agent shall participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a real or apparent conflict of interest would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any member of his or her immediate family, his or her partner, or an organization which employs or is about to employ any of the parties indicated herein, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for an award. The officers, employees, and agents of the recipient shall neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors, or anything of monetary value from contractors, or parties to sub-agreements. However, recipients may set standards for situations in which the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal value. The standards of conduct shall provide for disciplinary actions to be applied for violations of such standards by officers, employees, or agents of the recipient.

(d) *Competition.* All procurement transactions shall be conducted in a manner to provide, to the maximum extent practical, open and free competition. The recipient shall be alert to organizational conflicts of interest as well as noncompetitive practices among contractors that may restrict or eliminate competition or otherwise restrain trade. In order to ensure objective contractor performance and eliminate unfair competitive advantage, contractors that develop or draft specifications, requirements, statements of work, invitations for bids and/or requests for proposals shall be excluded from competing for such procurements. Awards shall be made to the bidder or offeror whose bid or offer is responsive to the solicitation and is most advantageous to the recipient, price, quality and other factors considered. The other factors shall include the bidder's or offeror's compliance with Section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968 (12 U.S.C. 1701u), hereafter referred to as "Section 3." Section 3 provides that, to the greatest extent feasible, and consistent with existing Federal, State, and local laws, and regulations, economic opportunities generated by certain HUD financial assistance shall be directed to low- and very low-income persons. Solicitations shall clearly set forth all requirements that the bidder or offeror shall fulfill in order for the bid or offer to be evaluated by the recipient. Any and all bids or offers may be rejected when it is in the recipient's interest to do so.

(e) *Procurement procedures.*

(1) All recipients shall establish written procurement procedures. These procedures shall provide for, at a minimum, that paragraphs (e)(1)(i), (e)(1)(ii) and (e)(1)(iii) of this section apply.

(i) Recipients avoid purchasing unnecessary items.

(ii) Where appropriate, an analysis is made of lease and purchase alternatives to determine which would be the most economical and practical procurement for the recipient.

(iii) Solicitations for goods and services provide for all of the following.

(A) A clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product or service to be procured. In competitive procurements, such a description shall not contain features which unduly restrict competition.

(B) Requirements which the bidder/offeror must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(C) A description, whenever practicable, of technical requirements in terms of functions to be performed or performance required, including the range of acceptable characteristics or minimum acceptable standards.

(D) The specific features of "brand name or equal" descriptions that bidders are required to meet when such items are included in the solicitation.

(E) The acceptance, to the extent practicable and economically feasible, of products and services dimensioned in the metric system of measurement.

(F) Preference, to the extent practicable and economically feasible, for products and services that conserve natural resources and protect the environment and are energy efficient.

(2) Positive efforts shall be made by recipients to utilize small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises, whenever possible. Recipients of Federal awards shall take all of the following steps to further this goal.

(i) Ensure that small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises are used to the fullest extent practicable.

(ii) Make information on forthcoming opportunities available and arrange time frames for purchases and contracts to encourage and facilitate participation by small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises.

(iii) Consider in the contract process whether firms competing for larger contracts intend to subcontract with small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises.

(iv) Encourage contracting with consortiums of small businesses, minority-owned firms and women's business enterprises when a contract is too large for one of these firms to handle individually.

(v) Use the services and assistance, as appropriate, of such organizations as the Small Business Administration and the Department of Commerce's Minority Business Development Agency in the solicitation and utilization of small businesses, minority-owned firms and women's business enterprises.

(3) The type of procuring instruments used (e.g., fixed price contracts, cost reimbursable contracts, purchase orders, and incentive contracts) shall be determined by the recipient but shall be appropriate for the particular procurement and for promoting the best interest of the program or project involved. The "cost-plus-a-percentage-of-cost" or "percentage of construction cost" methods of contracting shall not be used.

(4) Contracts shall be made only with responsible contractors who possess the potential ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of the proposed procurement. Consideration shall be given to such matters as contractor integrity; compliance with public policy, including, where applicable, Section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968 (12 U.S.C. 1701u); record of past performance; financial and technical resources or accessibility to other necessary resources. In certain circumstances, contracts with certain parties are restricted by agencies' implementation of E.O.'s 12549 and 12689, "Debarment and Suspension," as set forth at 24 CFR part 24.

(5) Recipients shall, on request, make available for the Federal awarding agency, pre-award review and procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, independent cost estimates, etc., when any of the following conditions apply.

(i) A recipient's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in HUD's implementation of Circular A-110.

(ii) The procurement is expected to exceed \$100,000 or the small purchase threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403 (11), whichever is greater, and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation.

(iii) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the small purchase threshold, specifies a "brand name" product.

(iv) The proposed award over the small purchase threshold is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement.

(v) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the amount of the small purchase threshold.

(f) *Cost and price analysis.* Some form of cost or price analysis shall be made and documented in the procurement files in connection with every procurement action. Price analysis may be accomplished in various ways, including the comparison of price quotations submitted, market prices and similar indicia, together with discounts. Cost analysis is the review and evaluation of each element of cost to determine reasonableness, allocability and allowability.

(g) *Procurement records.* Procurement records and files for purchases in excess of the small purchase threshold shall include the following at a minimum:

(1) Basis for contractor selection;

(2) Justification for lack of competition when competitive bids or offers are not obtained; and

(3) Basis for award cost or price.

(h) *Contract administration.* A system for contract administration shall be maintained to ensure contractor conformance with the terms, conditions and specifications of the contract and to ensure adequate and timely follow up of all purchases. Recipients shall evaluate contractor performance and document, as appropriate, whether contractors have met the terms, conditions and specifications of the contract.

(i) *Contract provisions.* The recipient shall include, in addition to provisions to define a sound and complete agreement, the following provisions in all contracts. The following provisions shall also be applied to subcontracts.

(1) Contracts in excess of the small purchase threshold shall contain contractual provisions or conditions that allow for administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances in which a contractor violates or breaches the contract terms, and provide for such remedial actions as may be appropriate.

(2) All contracts in excess of the small purchase threshold shall contain suitable provisions for termination by the recipient, including the manner by which termination shall be effected and the basis for settlement. In addition, such contracts shall describe conditions under which the contract may be terminated for default as well as conditions where the contract may be terminated because of circumstances beyond the control of the contractor.

(3) Except as otherwise required by statute, an award that requires the contracting (or subcontracting) for construction or facility improvements shall provide for the recipient to follow its own requirements relating to bid guarantees, performance bonds, and payment bonds unless the construction contract or subcontract exceeds \$100,000. For those contracts or subcontracts exceeding \$100,000, HUD may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the recipient, provided HUD has made a determination that the Federal Government's interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements shall be as follows:

(i) A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price. The "bid guarantee" shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder shall, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(ii) A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A "performance bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(iii) A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A "payment bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by statute of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

(iv) Where bonds are required in the situations described herein, the bonds shall be obtained from companies holding certificates of authority as acceptable sureties pursuant to 31 CFR part 223, "Surety Companies Doing Business with the United States."

(4) All negotiated contracts (except those for less than the small purchase threshold) awarded by recipients shall include a provision to the effect that the recipient, HUD, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives, shall have access to any books, documents, papers and records of the contractor which are directly pertinent to a specific program for the purpose of making audits, examinations, excerpts and transcriptions.

(5) All contracts, including small purchases, awarded by recipients and their contractors shall contain the procurement provisions of Appendix A to this rule, as applicable.

§ 84.85 Reports and records.

(a) *Purpose of reports and records.* Paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section set forth the procedures for monitoring and reporting on the recipient's financial and program performance and the necessary standard reporting forms. They also set forth record retention requirements.

(b) *Monitoring and reporting program performance.*

(1) Recipients are responsible for managing and monitoring each project, program, subaward, function or activity supported by the award. Recipients shall monitor subawards to ensure subrecipients have met the audit requirements as delineated in §84.82(e).

(2) The Federal awarding agency shall prescribe the frequency with which the performance reports shall be submitted. Except as provided in paragraph (b)(6) of this section, performance reports shall not be required more frequently than quarterly or less frequently than annually. Annual reports shall be due 90 calendar days after the grant year; quarterly or semi-annual reports shall be due 30 days after the reporting period. The Federal awarding agency may require annual reports before the anniversary dates of multiple year awards in lieu of these requirements. The final performance reports are due 90 calendar days after the expiration or termination of the award.

(3) If inappropriate, a final technical or performance report shall not be required after completion of the project.

(4) When required, performance reports shall generally contain, for each award, brief information on each of the following:

(i) A comparison of actual accomplishments with the goals and objectives established for the period, the findings of the investigator, or both. Whenever appropriate and the output of programs or projects can be readily quantified, such quantitative data should be related to cost data for computation of unit costs.

(ii) Reasons why established goals were not met, if appropriate.

(5) Recipients shall not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of performance reports.

(6) Recipients shall immediately notify HUD of developments that have a significant impact on the award-supported activities. Also, notification shall be given in the case of problems, delays, or adverse conditions which materially impair the ability to meet the objectives of the award. This notification shall include a statement of the action taken or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(7) HUD may make site visits, as needed.

(8) HUD shall comply with clearance requirements of 5 CFR part 1320 when requesting performance data from recipients.

(c) *Retention and access requirements for records.*

(1) This paragraph (c) sets forth requirements for record retention and access to records for awards to recipients. Federal awarding agencies shall not impose any other record retention or access requirements upon recipients.

(2) Financial records, supporting documents, statistical records, and all other records pertinent to an award shall be retained for a period of three years from the date of submission of the final expenditure report or, for awards that are renewed quarterly or annually, from the date of the submission of the quarterly or annual financial report, as authorized by HUD. The only exceptions are the following.

(i) If any litigation, claim, or audit is started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records shall be retained until all litigation, claims or audit findings involving the records have been resolved and final action taken.

(ii) Records for real property and equipment acquired with Federal funds shall be retained for 3 years after final disposition.

(iii) When records are transferred to or maintained by the Federal awarding agency, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the recipient.

(3) Copies of original records may be substituted for the original records if authorized by HUD.

(4) HUD shall request transfer of certain records to its custody from recipients when it determines that the records possess long term retention value. However, in order to avoid duplicate recordkeeping, HUD may make arrangements for recipients to retain any records that are continuously needed for joint use.

(5) HUD, the Inspector General, Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives, have the right of timely and unrestricted access to any books, documents, papers, or other records of recipients that are pertinent to the awards, in order to make audits, examinations, excerpts, transcripts and copies of such documents. This right also includes timely and reasonable access to a recipient's personnel for the purpose of interview and discussion related to such documents. The rights of access in this paragraph (c)(5) are not limited to the required retention period, but shall last as long as records are retained.

(6) Unless required by statute, HUD shall not place restrictions on recipients that limit public access to the records of recipients that are pertinent to an award, except when HUD can demonstrate that such records shall be kept confidential and would have been exempted from disclosure pursuant to the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if the records had belonged to HUD.

§ 84.86 Termination and enforcement.

(a) *Termination.*

(1) Awards may be terminated in whole or in part only if paragraphs (a)(1)(i), (a)(1)(ii), or (a)(1)(iii) of this section apply.

(i) By HUD, if a recipient materially fails to comply with the terms and conditions of an award.

(ii) By HUD with the consent of the recipient, in which case the two parties shall agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated.

(iii) By the recipient upon sending to HUD written notification setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if HUD determines in the case of partial termination that the reduced or modified portion of the grant will not accomplish the purposes for which the grant was made, it may terminate the grant in its entirety under either paragraphs (a)(1)(i) or (a)(1)(ii) of this section.

(2) If costs are allowed under an award, the responsibilities of the recipient referred to in §84.87(a)(1), including those for property management as applicable, shall be considered in the termination of the award, and provision shall be made for continuing responsibilities of the recipient after termination, as appropriate.

(3) If costs are allowed, the cost principles in §84.27 apply, even though the award was made on a lump-sum basis. Alternatively, a termination settlement may be reached by prorating the grant amount against the percentage of completion or by some other method as determined

by the Grant Officer, as long as the method used results in an equitable settlement to both parties.

(b) *Enforcement—*

(1) *Remedies for noncompliance.* If a recipient materially fails to comply with the terms and conditions of an award, whether stated in a Federal statute, regulation, assurance, application, or notice of award, HUD may, in addition to imposing any of the special conditions outlined in §84.14, take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances.

(i) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the recipient or more severe enforcement action by HUD.

(ii) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the current award.

(iii) Withhold further awards for the project or program.

(iv) Take other remedies that may be legally available.

(2) *Hearings and appeals.* In taking an enforcement action, HUD shall provide the recipient an opportunity for hearing, appeal, or other administrative proceeding to which the recipient is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

(3) *Effects of suspension and termination.* Costs of a recipient resulting from obligations incurred by the recipient during a suspension or after termination of an award are not allowable unless HUD expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. Other recipient costs during suspension or after termination which are necessary and not reasonably avoidable are allowable if paragraphs (b)(3)(i) and (b)(3)(ii) of this section apply.

(i) The costs result from obligations which were properly incurred by the recipient before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it, and in the case of a termination, are noncancellable.

(ii) The costs would be allowable if the award were not suspended or expired normally at the end of the funding period in which the termination takes effect.

(4) *Relationship to debarment and suspension.* The enforcement remedies identified in this section, including suspension and termination, do not preclude a recipient from being subject to debarment and suspension under E.O.s 12549 and 12689 and HUD's implementing regulations at 24 CFR part 24 (see §84.13).

§ 84.87 Closeout procedures, subsequent adjustments and continuing responsibilities.

(a) *Closeout procedures.*

(1) Recipients shall submit, within 90 calendar days after the date of completion of the award, all financial, performance, and other reports as required by the terms and conditions of the award. HUD may approve extensions when requested by the recipient.

(2) The recipient shall account for any real and personal property acquired with Federal funds or received from the Federal Government in accordance with §§84.83(b) through (g).

(b) *Subsequent adjustments and continuing responsibilities.*

(1) The closeout of an award does not affect any of the following:

(i) Audit requirements in §84.26.

(ii) Property management requirements in §§84.83(b) through (g).

(iii) Records retention as required in §84.53.

(2) After closeout of an award, a relationship created under an award may be modified or ended in whole or in part with the consent of HUD and the recipient, provided the responsibilities of the recipient are considered and provisions made for continuing responsibilities of the recipient, as appropriate.

Appendix A to Part 84—Contract Provisions

All contracts, awarded by a recipient including small purchases, shall contain the following provisions as applicable:

1. *Equal Employment Opportunity*—All contracts shall contain a provision requiring compliance with E.O. 11246, "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by E.O. 11375, "Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity," and as supplemented by regulations at 41 CFR part 60, "Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor."

2. *Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (18 U.S.C. 874 and 40 U.S.C. 276c)*—All contracts and subgrants in excess of \$2000 for construction or repair awarded by recipients and subrecipients shall include a provision for compliance with the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (18 U.S.C. 874), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 3, "Contractors and Subcontractors on Public Building or Public Work Financed in Whole or in Part by Loans or Grants from the United States"). The Act provides that each contractor or subrecipient shall be prohibited from inducing, by any means, any person employed in the construction, completion, or repair of public work, to give up any part of the compensation to which he is otherwise entitled. The recipient shall report all suspected or reported violations to HUD.

3. *Davis-Bacon Act, as amended (40 U.S.C. 276a to a-7)*—When required by Federal program legislation, all construction contracts awarded by the recipients and subrecipients of more than \$2000 shall include a provision for compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a to a-7) and as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5, "Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Contracts Governing Federally Financed and Assisted Construction"). Under this Act, contractors shall be required to pay wages to laborers and mechanics at a rate not less than the minimum wages specified in a wage determination made by the Secretary of Labor. In addition, contractors shall be required to pay wages not less than once a week. The recipient shall place a copy of the current prevailing wage determination issued by the Department of Labor in each solicitation and the award of a contract shall be conditioned upon the acceptance of the wage determination. The recipient shall report all suspected or reported violations to HUD.

4. *Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327 through 333)*—Where applicable, all contracts awarded by recipients in excess of \$2000 for construction contracts and in excess of \$2500 for other contracts that involve the employment of mechanics or laborers shall include a provision for compliance with Sections 102 and 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327–333), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5). Under Section 102 of the Act, each contractor shall be required to compute the wages of every mechanic and laborer on the basis of a standard workweek of 40 hours. Work in excess of the standard workweek is permissible provided that the worker is compensated at a rate of not less than 1 1/2 times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in the workweek. Section 107 of the Act is applicable to construction work and provides that no laborer or mechanic shall be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous. These requirements do not apply to the purchases of supplies or materials or articles ordinarily available on the open market, or contracts for transportation or transmission of intelligence.

5. *Rights to Inventions Made Under a Contract or Agreement*—Contracts or agreements for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work shall provide for the rights of the Federal Government and the recipient in any resulting invention in accordance with 37 CFR part 401, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements," and any implementing regulations issued by HUD.

6. *Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq.)*, as amended—Contracts and subgrants of amounts in excess of \$100,000 shall contain a provision that requires the recipient to agree to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.) and the

Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended (33 U.S.C. 1251 *et seq.*). Violations shall be reported to HUD and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

7. *Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352)*—Contractors who apply or bid for an award of \$100,000 or more shall file the required certification. Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier shall also disclose any lobbying with non-Federal funds that takes place in connection with obtaining any Federal award. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the recipient.

8. *Debarment and Suspension (E.O.s 12549 and 12689)*—No contract shall be made to parties listed on the General Services Administration's List of Parties Excluded from Federal Procurement or Nonprocurement Programs in accordance with E.O.s 12549 and 12689, "Debarment and Suspension," as set forth at 24 CFR part 24. This list contains the names of parties debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded by agencies, and contractors declared ineligible under statutory or regulatory authority other than E.O. 12549. Contractors with awards that exceed the small purchase threshold shall provide the required certification regarding its exclusion status and that of its principal employees.

9. *Drug-Free Workplace Requirements*—The Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988 (42 U.S.C. 701) requires grantees (including individuals) of federal agencies, as a prior condition of being awarded a grant, to certify that they will provide drug-free workplaces. Each potential recipient must certify that it will comply with drug-free workplace requirements in accordance with the Act and with HUD's rules at 24 CFR part 24, subpart F.

OMB Circular No. A-133
(in 2 CFR Part 200)

**Audits of States, Local Governments,
and Non-Profit Organizations**

Circular No. A-133
Revised to show changes published in the
***Federal Register* June 27, 2003 and June 26, 2007**

Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations

Accompanying *Federal Register* Materials:

-- Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations June 30, 1997

-- Revision published June 27, 2003

This revision: (1) increased the dollar threshold for the audit requirement; and (2) made changes regarding determination of cognizant and oversight agencies for audit.

-- Revision published June 26, 2007

This revision: (1) replaced the term "reportable conditions" with "significant deficiencies" to conform with current auditing standards; and (2) updated report submission requirements. Definition of "significant deficiencies" and "material weaknesses" are as defined in generally accepted auditing standards issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) and *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Government Accountability Office.

[Note: The June 27, 2003 revisions: (1) increased the dollar threshold for the audit requirement, and (2) made changes regarding determination of cognizant and oversight agencies for audit. The June 26, 2007 revisions make changes to (1) to replace the terms "reportable conditions" with "significant deficiencies" to conform with changes in auditing standards; and (2) reporting submission requirements.

In several places, the Circular includes guidelines for the reporting of "significant deficiencies" and "material weaknesses." These terms are to be used as defined in generally accepted auditing standards issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA), and *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Government Accountability Office.]

Circular No. A-133
Revised to show changes published in the Federal Registers
of June 27, 2003 and June 26, 2007
Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations

TO THE HEADS OF EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS AND ESTABLISHMENTS

SUBJECT: Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations

1. Purpose. This Circular is issued pursuant to the Single Audit Act of 1984, P.L. 98-502, and the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, P.L. 104-156. It sets forth standards for obtaining consistency and uniformity among Federal agencies for the audit of States, local governments, and non-profit organizations expending Federal awards.

2. Authority. Circular A-133 is issued under the authority of sections 503, 1111, and 7501 et seq. of title 31, United States Code, and Executive Orders 8248 and 11541.

3. Rescission and Supersession. This Circular rescinds Circular A-128, "Audits of State and Local Governments," issued April 12, 1985, and supersedes the prior Circular A-133, "Audits of Institutions of Higher Education and Other Non-Profit Institutions," issued April 22, 1996. For effective dates, see paragraph 10.

4. Policy. Except as provided herein, the standards set forth in this Circular shall be applied by all Federal agencies. If any statute specifically prescribes policies or specific requirements that differ from the standards provided herein, the provisions of the subsequent statute shall govern.

Federal agencies shall apply the provisions of the sections of this Circular to non-Federal entities, whether they are recipients expending Federal awards received directly from Federal awarding agencies, or are subrecipients expending Federal awards received from a pass-through entity (a recipient or another subrecipient).

This Circular does not apply to non-U.S. based entities expending Federal awards received either directly as a recipient or indirectly as a subrecipient.

5. Definitions. The definitions of key terms used in this Circular are contained in § ____.105 in the Attachment to this Circular.

6. Required Action. The specific requirements and responsibilities of Federal agencies and non-Federal entities are set forth in the Attachment to this Circular. Federal agencies making awards to non-Federal entities, either directly or indirectly, shall adopt the language in the Circular in codified regulations as provided in Section 10 (below), unless different provisions are required by Federal statute or are approved by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB).

7. OMB Responsibilities. OMB will review Federal agency regulations and implementation of this Circular, and will provide interpretations of policy requirements and assistance to ensure uniform, effective and efficient implementation.

8. Information Contact. Further information concerning Circular A-133 may be obtained by contacting the Financial Standards and Reporting Branch, Office of Federal Financial Management, Office of Management and Budget, Washington, DC 20503, telephone (202) 395-3993.

9. Review Date. This Circular will have a policy review three years from the date of issuance.

10. Effective Dates. The standards set forth in § .400 of the Attachment to this Circular, which apply directly to Federal agencies, shall be effective July 1, 1996, and shall apply to audits of fiscal years beginning after June 30, 1996, except as otherwise specified in § .400(a).

The standards set forth in this Circular that Federal agencies shall apply to non-Federal entities shall be adopted by Federal agencies in codified regulations not later than 60 days after publication of this final revision in the *Federal Register*, so that they will apply to audits of fiscal years beginning after June 30, 1996, with the exception that § .305(b) of the Attachment applies to audits of fiscal years beginning after June 30, 1998. The requirements of Circular A-128, although the Circular is rescinded, and the 1990 version of Circular A-133 remain in effect for audits of fiscal years beginning on or before June 30, 1996.

The revisions published in the *Federal Register* June 27, 2003, are effective for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003, and early implementation is not permitted with the exception of the definition of *oversight agency for audit* which is effective July 28, 2003.

Augustine T. Smythe
Acting Director

The revisions published in the *Federal Register* June 26, 2007, are effective for fiscal years ending on or after December 15, 2006.

Rob Portman
Director

Attachment

PART __ --AUDITS OF STATES, LOCAL GOVERNMENTS, AND NON-PROFIT ORGANIZATIONS

Subpart A--General

Sec.

- __ .100 Purpose.
- __ .105 Definitions.

Subpart B--Audits

- __ .200 Audit requirements.
- __ .205 Basis for determining Federal awards expended.
- __ .210 Subrecipient and vendor determinations.
- __ .215 Relation to other audit requirements.
- __ .220 Frequency of audits.
- __ .225 Sanctions.
- __ .230 Audit costs.
- __ .235 Program-specific audits.

Subpart C--Auditees

- __ .300 Auditee responsibilities.
- __ .305 Auditor selection.
- __ .310 Financial statements.
- __ .315 Audit findings follow-up.
- __ .320 Report submission.

Subpart D--Federal Agencies and Pass-Through Entities

- __ .400 Responsibilities.
- __ .405 Management decision.

Subpart E--Auditors

- __ .500 Scope of audit.
- __ .505 Audit reporting.
- __ .510 Audit findings.
- __ .515 Audit working papers.
- __ .520 Major program determination.
- __ .525 Criteria for Federal program risk.
- __ .530 Criteria for a low-risk auditee.

Appendix A to Part __ - Data Collection Form (Form SF-SAC).

Appendix B to Part __ - Circular A-133 Compliance Supplement.

Subpart A--General
§ ____ .100 Purpose.

This part sets forth standards for obtaining consistency and uniformity among Federal agencies for the audit of non-Federal entities expending Federal awards.

§ ____ .105 Definitions.

Auditee means any non-Federal entity that expends Federal awards which must be audited under this part.

Auditor means an auditor, that is a public accountant or a Federal, State or local government audit organization, which meets the general standards specified in generally accepted government auditing standards (GAGAS). The term auditor does not include internal auditors of non-profit organizations.

Audit finding means deficiencies which the auditor is required by § ____ .510(a) to report in the schedule of findings and questioned costs.

CFDA number means the number assigned to a Federal program in the Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA).

Cluster of programs means a grouping of closely related programs that share common compliance requirements. The types of clusters of programs are research and development (R&D), student financial aid (SFA), and other clusters. "Other clusters" are as defined by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) in the compliance supplement or as designated by a State for Federal awards the State provides to its subrecipients that meet the definition of a cluster of programs. When designating an "other cluster," a State shall identify the Federal awards included in the cluster and advise the subrecipients of compliance requirements applicable to the cluster, consistent with § ____ .400(d)(1) and § ____ .400(d)(2), respectively. A cluster of programs shall be considered as one program for determining major programs, as described in § ____ .520, and, with the exception of R&D as described in § ____ .200(c), whether a program-specific audit may be elected.

Cognizant agency for audit means the Federal agency designated to carry out the responsibilities described in § ____ .400(a).

Compliance supplement refers to the Circular A-133 Compliance Supplement, included as Appendix B to Circular A-133, or such documents as OMB or its designee may issue to replace it. This document is available from the Government Printing Office, Superintendent of Documents, Washington, DC 20402-9325.

Corrective action means action taken by the auditee that:

- (1) Corrects identified deficiencies;
- (2) Produces recommended improvements; or
- (3) Demonstrates that audit findings are either invalid or do not warrant auditee action.

Federal agency has the same meaning as the term agency in Section 551(1) of title 5, United States Code.

Federal award means Federal financial assistance and Federal cost-reimbursement contracts that non-Federal entities receive directly from Federal awarding agencies or indirectly from pass-through entities. It does

not include procurement contracts, under grants or contracts, used to buy goods or services from vendors. Any audits of such vendors shall be covered by the terms and conditions of the contract. Contracts to operate Federal Government owned, contractor operated facilities (GOCOs) are excluded from the requirements of this part.

Federal awarding agency means the Federal agency that provides an award directly to the recipient.

Federal financial assistance means assistance that non-Federal entities receive or administer in the form of grants, loans, loan guarantees, property (including donated surplus property), cooperative agreements, interest subsidies, insurance, food commodities, direct appropriations, and other assistance, but does not include amounts received as reimbursement for services rendered to individuals as described in § __.205(h) and § __.205(i).

Federal program means:

(1) All Federal awards to a non-Federal entity assigned a single number in the CFDA.

(2) When no CFDA number is assigned, all Federal awards from the same agency made for the same purpose should be combined and considered one program.

(3) Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2) of this definition, a cluster of programs. The types of clusters of programs are:

(i) Research and development (R&D);

(ii) Student financial aid (SFA); and

(iii) "Other clusters," as described in the definition of cluster of programs in this section.

GAGAS means generally accepted government auditing standards issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, which are applicable to financial audits.

Generally accepted accounting principles has the meaning specified in generally accepted auditing standards issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA).

Indian tribe means any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community, including any Alaskan Native village or regional or village corporation (as defined in, or established under, the Alaskan Native Claims Settlement Act) that is recognized by the United States as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians.

Internal control means a process, effected by an entity's management and other personnel, designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of objectives in the following categories:

(1) Effectiveness and efficiency of operations;

(2) Reliability of financial reporting; and

(3) Compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

Internal control pertaining to the compliance requirements for Federal programs (Internal control over Federal programs) means a process--effected by

an entity's management and other personnel--designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of the following objectives for Federal programs:

(1) Transactions are properly recorded and accounted for to:

(i) Permit the preparation of reliable financial statements and Federal reports;

(ii) Maintain accountability over assets; and

(iii) Demonstrate compliance with laws, regulations, and other compliance requirements;

(2) Transactions are executed in compliance with:

(i) Laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements that could have a direct and material effect on a Federal program; and

(ii) Any other laws and regulations that are identified in the compliance supplement; and

(3) Funds, property, and other assets are safeguarded against loss from unauthorized use or disposition.

Loan means a Federal loan or loan guarantee received or administered by a non-Federal entity.

Local government means any unit of local government within a State, including a county, borough, municipality, city, town, township, parish, local public authority, special district, school district, intrastate district, council of governments, and any other instrumentality of local government.

Major program means a Federal program determined by the auditor to be a major program in accordance with § .520 or a program identified as a major program by a Federal agency or pass-through entity in accordance with § .215(c).

Management decision means the evaluation by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity of the audit findings and corrective action plan and the issuance of a written decision as to what corrective action is necessary.

Non-Federal entity means a State, local government, or non-profit organization.

Non-profit organization means:

(1) any corporation, trust, association, cooperative, or other organization that:

(i) Is operated primarily for scientific, educational, service, charitable, or similar purposes in the public interest;

(ii) Is not organized primarily for profit; and

(iii) Uses its net proceeds to maintain, improve, or expand its operations; and

(2) The term non-profit organization includes non-profit institutions of higher education and hospitals.

OMB means the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

Oversight agency for audit means the Federal awarding agency that provides the predominant amount of direct funding to a recipient not assigned a cognizant agency for audit. When there is no direct funding; the Federal agency with the predominant indirect funding shall assume the oversight responsibilities. The duties of the oversight agency for audit are described in § ___.400(b).

Effective July 28, 2003, the following is added to this definition:
A Federal agency with oversight for an auditee may reassign oversight to another Federal agency which provides substantial funding and agrees to be the oversight agency for audit. Within 30 days after any reassignment, both the old and the new oversight agency for audit shall notify the auditee, and, if known, the auditor of the reassignment."

Pass-through entity means a non-Federal entity that provides a Federal award to a subrecipient to carry out a Federal program.

Program-specific audit means an audit of one Federal program as provided for in § ___.200(c) and § ___.235.

Questioned cost means a cost that is questioned by the auditor because of an audit finding:

(1) Which resulted from a violation or possible violation of a provision of a law, regulation, contract, grant, cooperative agreement, or other agreement or document governing the use of Federal funds, including funds used to match Federal funds;

(2) Where the costs, at the time of the audit, are not supported by adequate documentation; or

(3) Where the costs incurred appear unreasonable and do not reflect the actions a prudent person would take in the circumstances..

Recipient means a non-Federal entity that expends Federal awards received directly from a Federal awarding agency to carry out a Federal program.

Research and development (R&D) means all research activities, both basic and applied, and all development activities that are performed by a non-Federal entity. Research is defined as a systematic study directed toward fuller scientific knowledge or understanding of the subject studied. The term research also includes activities involving the training of individuals in research techniques where such activities utilize the same facilities as other research and development activities and where such activities are not included in the instruction function. Development is the systematic use of knowledge and understanding gained from research directed toward the production of useful materials, devices, systems, or methods, including design and development of prototypes and processes.

Single audit means an audit which includes both the entity's financial statements and the Federal awards as described in § ___.500.

State means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and the Trust Territory of the

Pacific Islands, any instrumentality thereof, any multi-State, regional, or interstate entity which has governmental functions, and any Indian tribe as defined in this section.

Student Financial Aid (SFA) includes those programs of general student assistance, such as those authorized by Title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965, as amended, (20 U.S.C. 1070 et seq.) which is administered by the U.S. Department of Education, and similar programs provided by other Federal agencies. It does not include programs which provide fellowships or similar Federal awards to students on a competitive basis, or for specified studies or research.

Subrecipient means a non-Federal entity that expends Federal awards received from a pass-through entity to carry out a Federal program, but does not include an individual that is a beneficiary of such a program. A subrecipient may also be a recipient of other Federal awards directly from a Federal awarding agency. Guidance on distinguishing between a subrecipient and a vendor is provided in § ___.210.

Types of compliance requirements refers to the types of compliance requirements listed in the compliance supplement. Examples include: activities allowed or unallowed; allowable costs/cost principles; cash management; eligibility; matching, level of effort, earmarking; and, reporting.

Vendor means a dealer, distributor, merchant, or other seller providing goods or services that are required for the conduct of a Federal program. These goods or services may be for an organization's own use or for the use of beneficiaries of the Federal program. Additional guidance on distinguishing between a subrecipient and a vendor is provided in § ___.210.

Subpart B--Audits

§ ___.200 Audit requirements.

(a) Audit required. Non-Federal entities that expend \$300,000 (\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003) or more in a year in Federal awards shall have a single or program-specific audit conducted for that year in accordance with the provisions of this part. Guidance on determining Federal awards expended is provided in § ___.205.

(b) Single audit. Non-Federal entities that expend \$300,000 (\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003) or more in a year in Federal awards shall have a single audit conducted in accordance with § ___.500 except when they elect to have a program-specific audit conducted in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) Program-specific audit election. When an auditee expends Federal awards under only one Federal program (excluding R&D) and the Federal program's laws, regulations, or grant agreements do not require a financial statement audit of the auditee, the auditee may elect to have a program-specific audit conducted in accordance with § ___.235. A program-specific audit may not be elected for R&D unless all of the Federal awards expended were received from the same Federal agency, or the same Federal agency and the same pass-through entity, and that Federal agency, or pass-through entity in the case of a subrecipient, approves in advance a program-specific audit.

(d) Exemption when Federal awards expended are less than \$300,000 (\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003). Non-Federal

entities that expend less than \$300,000 (\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003) a year in Federal awards are exempt from Federal audit requirements for that year, except as noted in § .215(a), but records must be available for review or audit by appropriate officials of the Federal agency, pass-through entity, and General Accounting Office (GAO).

(e) Federally Funded Research and Development Centers (FFRDC). Management of an auditee that owns or operates a FFRDC may elect to treat the FFRDC as a separate entity for purposes of this part.

§ .205 **Basis for determining Federal awards expended.**

(a) Determining Federal awards expended. The determination of when an award is expended should be based on when the activity related to the award occurs. Generally, the activity pertains to events that require the non-Federal entity to comply with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements, such as: expenditure/expense transactions associated with grants, cost-reimbursement contracts, cooperative agreements, and direct appropriations; the disbursement of funds passed through to subrecipients; the use of loan proceeds under loan and loan guarantee programs; the receipt of property; the receipt of surplus property; the receipt or use of program income; the distribution or consumption of food commodities; the disbursement of amounts entitling the non-Federal entity to an interest subsidy; and, the period when insurance is in force.

(b) Loan and loan guarantees (loans). Since the Federal Government is at risk for loans until the debt is repaid, the following guidelines shall be used to calculate the value of Federal awards expended under loan programs, except as noted in paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section:

- (1) Value of new loans made or received during the fiscal year;
plus
- (2) Balance of loans from previous years for which the Federal Government imposes continuing compliance requirements; plus
- (3) Any interest subsidy, cash, or administrative cost allowance received.

(c) Loan and loan guarantees (loans) at institutions of higher education. When loans are made to students of an institution of higher education but the institution does not make the loans, then only the value of loans made during the year shall be considered Federal awards expended in that year. The balance of loans for previous years is not included as Federal awards expended because the lender accounts for the prior balances.

(d) Prior loan and loan guarantees (loans). Loans, the proceeds of which were received and expended in prior-years, are not considered Federal awards expended under this part when the laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements pertaining to such loans impose no continuing compliance requirements other than to repay the loans.

(e) Endowment funds. The cumulative balance of Federal awards for endowment funds which are federally restricted are considered awards expended in each year in which the funds are still restricted.

(f) Free rent. Free rent received by itself is not considered a Federal award expended under this part. However, free rent received as part

of an award to carry out a Federal program shall be included in determining Federal awards expended and subject to audit under this part.

(g) Valuing non-cash assistance. Federal non-cash assistance, such as free rent, food stamps, food commodities, donated property, or donated surplus property, shall be valued at fair market value at the time of receipt or the assessed value provided by the Federal agency.

(h) Medicare. Medicare payments to a non-Federal entity for providing patient care services to Medicare eligible individuals are not considered Federal awards expended under this part.

(i) Medicaid. Medicaid payments to a subrecipient for providing patient care services to Medicaid eligible individuals are not considered Federal awards expended under this part unless a State requires the funds to be treated as Federal awards expended because reimbursement is on a cost-reimbursement basis.

(j) Certain loans provided by the National Credit Union Administration. For purposes of this part, loans made from the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund and the Central Liquidity Facility that are funded by contributions from insured institutions are not considered Federal awards expended.

§ __.210 Subrecipient and vendor determinations.

(a) General. An auditee may be a recipient, a subrecipient, and a vendor. Federal awards expended as a recipient or a subrecipient would be subject to audit under this part. The payments received for goods or services provided as a vendor would not be considered Federal awards. The guidance in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section should be considered in determining whether payments constitute a Federal award or a payment for goods and services.

(b) Federal award. Characteristics indicative of a Federal award received by a subrecipient are when the organization:

- (1) Determines who is eligible to receive what Federal financial assistance;
- (2) Has its performance measured against whether the objectives of the Federal program are met;
- (3) Has responsibility for programmatic decision making;
- (4) Has responsibility for adherence to applicable Federal program compliance requirements; and
- (5) Uses the Federal funds to carry out a program of the organization as compared to providing goods or services for a program of the pass-through entity.

(c) Payment for goods and services. Characteristics indicative of a payment for goods and services received by a vendor are when the organization:

- (1) Provides the goods and services within normal business operations;

- (2) Provides similar goods or services to many different purchasers;
- (3) Operates in a competitive environment;
- (4) Provides goods or services that are ancillary to the operation of the Federal program; and
- (5) Is not subject to compliance requirements of the Federal program.

(d) Use of judgment in making determination. There may be unusual circumstances or exceptions to the listed characteristics. In making the determination of whether a subrecipient or vendor relationship exists, the substance of the relationship is more important than the form of the agreement. It is not expected that all of the characteristics will be present and judgment should be used in determining whether an entity is a subrecipient or vendor.

(e) For-profit subrecipient. Since this part does not apply to for-profit subrecipients, the pass-through entity is responsible for establishing requirements, as necessary, to ensure compliance by for-profit subrecipients. The contract with the for-profit subrecipient should describe applicable compliance requirements and the for-profit subrecipient's compliance responsibility. Methods to ensure compliance for Federal awards made to for-profit subrecipients may include pre-award audits, monitoring during the contract, and post-award audits.

(f) Compliance responsibility for vendors. In most cases, the auditee's compliance responsibility for vendors is only to ensure that the procurement, receipt, and payment for goods and services comply with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements. Program compliance requirements normally do not pass through to vendors. However, the auditee is responsible for ensuring compliance for vendor transactions which are structured such that the vendor is responsible for program compliance or the vendor's records must be reviewed to determine program compliance. Also, when these vendor transactions relate to a major program, the scope of the audit shall include determining whether these transactions are in compliance with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements.

§ .215 **Relation to other audit requirements.**

(a) Audit under this part in lieu of other audits. An audit made in accordance with this part shall be in lieu of any financial audit required under individual Federal awards. To the extent this audit meets a Federal agency's needs, it shall rely upon and use such audits. The provisions of this part neither limit the authority of Federal agencies, including their Inspectors General, or GAO to conduct or arrange for additional audits (e.g., financial audits, performance audits, evaluations, inspections, or reviews) nor authorize any auditee to constrain Federal agencies from carrying out additional audits. Any additional audits shall be planned and performed in such a way as to build upon work performed by other auditors.

(b) Federal agency to pay for additional audits. A Federal agency that conducts or contracts for additional audits shall, consistent with other applicable laws and regulations, arrange for funding the full cost of such additional audits.

(c) Request for a program to be audited as a major program. A Federal agency may request an auditee to have a particular Federal program audited as a major program in lieu of the Federal agency conducting or arranging for the additional audits. To allow for planning, such requests should be made at least 180 days prior to the end of the fiscal year to be audited. The auditee, after consultation with its auditor, should promptly respond to such request by informing the Federal agency whether the program would otherwise be audited as a major program using the risk-based audit approach described in § __.520 and, if not, the estimated incremental cost. The Federal agency shall then promptly confirm to the auditee whether it wants the program audited as a major program. If the program is to be audited as a major program based upon this Federal agency request, and the Federal agency agrees to pay the full incremental costs, then the auditee shall have the program audited as a major program. A pass-through entity may use the provisions of this paragraph for a subrecipient.

§ __.220 Frequency of audits.

Except for the provisions for biennial audits provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, audits required by this part shall be performed annually. Any biennial audit shall cover both years within the biennial period.

(a) A State or local government that is required by constitution or statute, in effect on January 1, 1987, to undergo its audits less frequently than annually, is permitted to undergo its audits pursuant to this part biennially. This requirement must still be in effect for the biennial period under audit.

(b) Any non-profit organization that had biennial audits for all biennial periods ending between July 1, 1992, and January 1, 1995, is permitted to undergo its audits pursuant to this part biennially.

§ __.225 Sanctions.

No audit costs may be charged to Federal awards when audits required by this part have not been made or have been made but not in accordance with this part. In cases of continued inability or unwillingness to have an audit conducted in accordance with this part, Federal agencies and pass-through entities shall take appropriate action using sanctions such as:

(a) Withholding a percentage of Federal awards until the audit is completed satisfactorily;

(b) Withholding or disallowing overhead costs;

(c) Suspending Federal awards until the audit is conducted; or

(d) Terminating the Federal award.

§ __.230 Audit costs.

(a) Allowable costs. Unless prohibited by law, the cost of audits made in accordance with the provisions of this part are allowable charges to Federal awards. The charges may be considered a direct cost or an allocated indirect cost, as determined in accordance with the provisions of applicable OMB cost principles circulars, the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) (48 CFR parts 30 and 31), or other applicable cost principles or regulations.

(b) Unallowable costs. A non-Federal entity shall not charge the following to a Federal award:

(1) The cost of any audit under the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501 et seq.) not conducted in accordance with this part.

(2) The cost of auditing a non-Federal entity which has Federal awards expended of less than \$300,000 (*\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003*) per year and is thereby exempted under § .200(d) from having an audit conducted under this part. However, this does not prohibit a pass-through entity from charging Federal awards for the cost of limited scope audits to monitor its subrecipients in accordance with § .400(d)(3), provided the subrecipient does not have a single audit. For purposes of this part, limited scope audits only include agreed-upon procedures engagements conducted in accordance with either the AICPA's generally accepted auditing standards or attestation standards, that are paid for and arranged by a pass-through entity and address only one or more of the following types of compliance requirements: activities allowed or unallowed; allowable costs/cost principles; eligibility; matching, level of effort, earmarking; and, reporting.

§ .235 Program-specific audits.

(a) Program-specific audit guide available. In many cases, a program-specific audit guide will be available to provide specific guidance to the auditor with respect to internal control, compliance requirements, suggested audit procedures, and audit reporting requirements. The auditor should contact the Office of Inspector General of the Federal agency to determine whether such a guide is available. When a current program-specific audit guide is available, the auditor shall follow GAGAS and the guide when performing a program-specific audit.

(b) Program-specific audit guide not available. (1) When a program-specific audit guide is not available, the auditee and auditor shall have basically the same responsibilities for the Federal program as they would have for an audit of a major program in a single audit.

(2) The auditee shall prepare the financial statement(s) for the Federal program that includes, at a minimum, a schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for the program and notes that describe the significant accounting policies used in preparing the schedule, a summary schedule of prior audit findings consistent with the requirements of § .315(b), and a corrective action plan consistent with the requirements of § .315(c).

(3) The auditor shall:

(i) Perform an audit of the financial statement(s) for the Federal program in accordance with GAGAS;

(ii) Obtain an understanding of internal control and perform tests of internal control over the Federal program consistent with the requirements of § .500(c) for a major program;

(iii) Perform procedures to determine whether the auditee has complied with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements that could have a direct and material effect on the Federal program consistent with the requirements of § .500(d) for a major program; and

(iv) Follow up on prior audit findings, perform procedures to assess the reasonableness of the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee, and report, as a current year audit finding, when the auditor concludes that the summary schedule of prior audit findings materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding in accordance with the requirements of § __.500 (e).

(4) The auditor's report(s) may be in the form of either combined or separate reports and may be organized differently from the manner presented in this section. The auditor's report(s) shall state that the audit was conducted in accordance with this part and include the following:

(i) An opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the financial statement(s) of the Federal program is presented fairly in all material respects in conformity with the stated accounting policies;

(ii) A report on internal control related to the Federal program, which shall describe the scope of testing of internal control and the results of the tests;

(iii) A report on compliance which includes an opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the auditee complied with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements which could have a direct and material effect on the Federal program; and

(iv) A schedule of findings and questioned costs for the Federal program that includes a summary of the auditor's results relative to the Federal program in a format consistent with § __.505 (d) (1) and findings and questioned costs consistent with the requirements of § __.505 (d) (3).

(c) Report submission for program-specific audits.

(1) The audit shall be completed and the reporting required by paragraph (c) (2) or (c) (3) of this section submitted within the earlier of 30 days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or nine months after the end of the audit period, unless a longer period is agreed to in advance by the Federal agency that provided the funding or a different period is specified in a program-specific audit guide. (However, for fiscal years beginning on or before June 30, 1998, the audit shall be completed and the required reporting shall be submitted within the earlier of 30 days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or 13 months after the end of the audit period, unless a different period is specified in a program-specific audit guide.) Unless restricted by law or regulation, the auditee shall make report copies available for public inspection.

(2) When a program-specific audit guide is available, the auditee shall submit to the Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB the data collection form prepared in accordance with § __.320 (b), as applicable to a program-specific audit, and the reporting required by the program-specific audit guide to be retained as an archival copy. Also, the auditee shall submit to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity the reporting required by the program-specific audit guide.

(3) When a program-specific audit guide is not available, the reporting package for a program-specific audit shall consist of the financial statement(s) of the Federal program, a summary schedule of prior audit findings, and a corrective action plan as described in paragraph (b) (2) of this section, and the auditor's report(s) described in paragraph (b) (4) of this section. The data collection form prepared in accordance with

§ __.320 (b), as applicable to a program-specific audit, and one copy of this reporting package shall be submitted to the Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB to be retained as an archival copy. Also, when the schedule of findings and questioned costs disclosed audit findings or the summary schedule of prior audit findings reported the status of any audit findings, the auditee shall submit one copy of the reporting package to the Federal clearinghouse on behalf of the Federal awarding agency, or directly to the pass-through entity in the case of a subrecipient. Instead of submitting the reporting package to the pass-through entity, when a subrecipient is not required to submit a reporting package to the pass-through entity, the subrecipient shall provide written notification to the pass-through entity, consistent with the requirements of § __.320 (e) (2). A subrecipient may submit a copy of the reporting package to the pass-through entity to comply with this notification requirement.

(d) Other sections of this part may apply. Program-specific audits are subject to § __.100 through § __.215 (b), § __.220 through § __.230, § __.300 through § __.305, § __.315, § __.320 (f) through § __.320 (j), § __.400 through § __.405, § __.510 through § __.515, and other referenced provisions of this part unless contrary to the provisions of this section, a program-specific audit guide, or program laws and regulations.

Subpart C--Auditees

§ __.300 Auditee responsibilities.

The auditee shall:

(a) Identify, in its accounts, all Federal awards received and expended and the Federal programs under which they were received. Federal program and award identification shall include, as applicable, the CFDA title and number, award number and year, name of the Federal agency, and name of the pass-through entity.

(b) Maintain internal control over Federal programs that provides reasonable assurance that the auditee is managing Federal awards in compliance with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements that could have a material effect on each of its Federal programs.

(c) Comply with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements related to each of its Federal programs.

(d) Prepare appropriate financial statements, including the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards in accordance with § __.310.

(e) Ensure that the audits required by this part are properly performed and submitted when due. When extensions to the report submission due date required by § __.320 (a) are granted by the cognizant or oversight agency for audit, promptly notify the Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB and each pass-through entity providing Federal awards of the extension.

(f) Follow up and take corrective action on audit findings, including preparation of a summary schedule of prior audit findings and a corrective action plan in accordance with § __.315 (b) and § __.315 (c), respectively.

§ __.305 Auditor selection.

(a) Auditor procurement. In procuring audit services, auditees shall follow the procurement standards prescribed by the Grants Management Common Rule (hereinafter referred to as the "A-102 Common Rule") published March 11, 1988 and amended April 19, 1995 [insert appropriate CFR citation], Circular A-110, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals and Other Non-Profit Organizations," or the FAR (48 CFR part 42), as applicable (OMB Circulars are available from the Office of Administration, Publications Office, room 2200, New Executive Office Building, Washington, DC 20503). Whenever possible, auditees shall make positive efforts to utilize small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises, in procuring audit services as stated in the A-102 Common Rule, OMB Circular A-110, or the FAR (48 CFR part 42), as applicable. In requesting proposals for audit services, the objectives and scope of the audit should be made clear. Factors to be considered in evaluating each proposal for audit services include the responsiveness to the request for proposal, relevant experience, availability of staff with professional qualifications and technical abilities, the results of external quality control reviews, and price.

(b) Restriction on auditor preparing indirect cost proposals. An auditor who prepares the indirect cost proposal or cost allocation plan may not also be selected to perform the audit required by this part when the indirect costs recovered by the auditee during the prior year exceeded \$1 million. This restriction applies to the base year used in the preparation of the indirect cost proposal or cost allocation plan and any subsequent years in which the resulting indirect cost agreement or cost allocation plan is used to recover costs. To minimize any disruption in existing contracts for audit services, this paragraph applies to audits of fiscal years beginning after June 30, 1998.

(c) Use of Federal auditors. Federal auditors may perform all or part of the work required under this part if they comply fully with the requirements of this part.

§ .310 Financial statements.

(a) Financial statements. The auditee shall prepare financial statements that reflect its financial position, results of operations or changes in net assets, and, where appropriate, cash flows for the fiscal year audited. The financial statements shall be for the same organizational unit and fiscal year that is chosen to meet the requirements of this part. However, organization-wide financial statements may also include departments, agencies, and other organizational units that have separate audits in accordance with § .500(a) and prepare separate financial statements.

(b) Schedule of expenditures of Federal awards. The auditee shall also prepare a schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for the period covered by the auditee's financial statements. While not required, the auditee may choose to provide information requested by Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities to make the schedule easier to use. For example, when a Federal program has multiple award years, the auditee may list the amount of Federal awards expended for each award year separately. At a minimum, the schedule shall:

(1) List individual Federal programs by Federal agency. For Federal programs included in a cluster of programs, list individual Federal programs within a cluster of programs. For R&D, total Federal awards expended shall be shown either by individual award or by Federal agency and major subdivision within the Federal agency. For example, the National Institutes of Health is a major subdivision in the Department of Health and Human Services.

(2) For Federal awards received as a subrecipient, the name of the pass-through entity and identifying number assigned by the pass-through entity shall be included.

(3) Provide total Federal awards expended for each individual Federal program and the CFDA number or other identifying number when the CFDA information is not available.

(4) Include notes that describe the significant accounting policies used in preparing the schedule.

(5) To the extent practical, pass-through entities should identify in the schedule the total amount provided to subrecipients from each Federal program.

(6) Include, in either the schedule or a note to the schedule, the value of the Federal awards expended in the form of non-cash assistance, the amount of insurance in effect during the year, and loans or loan guarantees outstanding at year end. While not required, it is preferable to present this information in the schedule.

§ __.315 **Audit findings follow-up.**

(a) General. The auditee is responsible for follow-up and corrective action on all audit findings. As part of this responsibility, the auditee shall prepare a summary schedule of prior audit findings. The auditee shall also prepare a corrective action plan for current year audit findings. The summary schedule of prior audit findings and the corrective action plan shall include the reference numbers the auditor assigns to audit findings under § __.510(c). Since the summary schedule may include audit findings from multiple years, it shall include the fiscal year in which the finding initially occurred.

(b) Summary schedule of prior audit findings. The summary schedule of prior audit findings shall report the status of all audit findings included in the prior audit's schedule of findings and questioned costs relative to Federal awards. The summary schedule shall also include audit findings reported in the prior audit's summary schedule of prior audit findings except audit findings listed as corrected in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section, or no longer valid or not warranting further action in accordance with paragraph (b)(4) of this section.

(1) When audit findings were fully corrected, the summary schedule need only list the audit findings and state that corrective action was taken.

(2) When audit findings were not corrected or were only partially corrected, the summary schedule shall describe the planned corrective action as well as any partial corrective action taken.

(3) When corrective action taken is significantly different from corrective action previously reported in a corrective action plan or in the Federal agency's or pass-through entity's management decision, the summary schedule shall provide an explanation.

(4) When the auditee believes the audit findings are no longer valid or do not warrant further action, the reasons for this position shall be described in the summary schedule. A valid reason for considering an audit finding as not warranting further action is that all of the following have occurred:

(i) Two years have passed since the audit report in which

the finding occurred was submitted to the Federal clearinghouse;

(ii) The Federal agency or pass-through entity is not currently following up with the auditee on the audit finding; and

(iii) A management decision was not issued.

(c) Corrective action plan. At the completion of the audit, the auditee shall prepare a corrective action plan to address each audit finding included in the current year auditor's reports. The corrective action plan shall provide the name(s) of the contact person(s) responsible for corrective action, the corrective action planned, and the anticipated completion date. If the auditee does not agree with the audit findings or believes corrective action is not required, then the corrective action plan shall include an explanation and specific reasons.

§ .320 Report submission.

(a) General. The audit shall be completed and the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section shall be submitted within the earlier of 30 days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or nine months after the end of the audit period, unless a longer period is agreed to in advance by the cognizant or oversight agency for audit. (However, for fiscal years beginning on or before June 30, 1998, the audit shall be completed and the data collection form and reporting package shall be submitted within the earlier of 30 days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or 13 months after the end of the audit period.) Unless restricted by law or regulation, the auditee shall make copies available for public inspection.

(b) Data Collection. (1) The auditee shall submit a data collection form which states whether the audit was completed in accordance with this part and provides information about the auditee, its Federal programs, and the results of the audit. The form shall be approved by OMB, available from the Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB, and include data elements similar to those presented in this paragraph. A senior level representative of the auditee (e.g., State controller, director of finance, chief executive officer, or chief financial officer) shall sign a statement to be included as part of the form certifying that: the auditee complied with the requirements of this part, the form was prepared in accordance with this part (and the instructions accompanying the form), and the information included in the form, in its entirety, are accurate and complete.

(2) The data collection form shall include the following data elements:

- (i) The type of report the auditor issued on the financial statements of the auditee (i.e., unqualified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion).
- (ii) Where applicable, a statement that significant deficiencies in internal control were disclosed by the audit of the financial statements and whether any such conditions were material weaknesses.
- (iii) A statement as to whether the audit disclosed any noncompliance which is material to the financial statements of the auditee.
- (iv) Where applicable, a statement that significant deficiencies in internal control over major programs were disclosed by the audit and whether any such conditions were material weaknesses.
- (v) The type of report the auditor issued on compliance for major

programs (i.e., unqualified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion).

- (vi) A list of the Federal awarding agencies which will receive a copy of the reporting package pursuant to § __.320(d)(2) of OMB Circular A-133.
- (vii) A yes or no statement as to whether the auditee qualified as a low-risk auditee under § __.530 of OMB Circular A-133.
- (viii) The dollar threshold used to distinguish between Type A and Type B programs as defined in § __.520(b) of OMB Circular A-133.
- (ix) The Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) number for each Federal program, as applicable.
- (x) The name of each Federal program and identification of each major program. Individual programs within a cluster of programs should be listed in the same level of detail as they are listed in the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards.
- (xi) The amount of expenditures in the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards associated with each Federal program.
- (xii) For each Federal program, a yes or no statement as to whether there are audit findings in each of the following types of compliance requirements and the total amount of any questioned costs:
 - (A) Activities allowed or unallowed.
 - (B) Allowable costs/cost principles.
 - (C) Cash management.
 - (D) Davis-Bacon Act.
 - (E) Eligibility.
 - (F) Equipment and real property management.
 - (G) Matching, level of effort, earmarking.
 - (H) Period of availability of Federal funds.
 - (I) Procurement and suspension and debarment.
 - (J) Program income.
 - (K) Real property acquisition and relocation assistance.
 - (L) Reporting.
 - (M) Subrecipient monitoring.
 - (N) Special tests and provisions.
- (xiii) Auditee Name, Employer Identification Number(s), Name and Title of Certifying Official, Telephone Number, Signature, and Date.
- (xiv) Auditor Name, Name and Title of Contact Person, Auditor Address, Auditor Telephone Number, Signature, and Date.
- (xv) Whether the auditee has either a cognizant or oversight agency for audit.
- (xvi) The name of the cognizant or oversight agency for audit determined in accordance with § __.400(a) and § __.400(b), respectively.

(3) Using the information included in the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section, the auditor shall complete the applicable sections of the form. The auditor shall sign a statement to be included as part of the data collection form that indicates, at a minimum, the source of the information included in the form, the auditor's responsibility for the information, that the form is not a substitute for the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section, and that the content of

the form is limited to the data elements prescribed by OMB.

(c) Reporting package. The reporting package shall include the:

- (1) Financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards discussed in § ____.310(a) and § ____.310(b), respectively;
- (2) Summary schedule of prior audit findings discussed in § ____.315(b);
- (3) Auditor's report(s) discussed in § ____.505; and
- (4) Corrective action plan discussed in § ____.315(c).

(d) Submission to clearinghouse. All auditees shall submit to the Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB a single copy of the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(e) Additional submission by subrecipients. (1) In addition to the requirements discussed in paragraph (d) of this section, auditees that are also subrecipients shall submit to each pass-through entity one copy of the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section for each pass-through entity when the schedule of findings and questioned costs disclosed audit findings relating to Federal awards that the pass-through entity provided or the summary schedule of prior audit findings reported the status of any audit findings relating to Federal awards that the pass-through entity provided.

(2) Instead of submitting the reporting package to a pass-through entity, when a subrecipient is not required to submit a reporting package to a pass-through entity pursuant to paragraph (e)(1) of this section, the subrecipient shall provide written notification to the pass-through entity that: an audit of the subrecipient was conducted in accordance with this part (including the period covered by the audit and the name, amount, and CFDA number of the Federal award(s) provided by the pass-through entity); the schedule of findings and questioned costs disclosed no audit findings relating to the Federal award(s) that the pass-through entity provided; and, the summary schedule of prior audit findings did not report on the status of any audit findings relating to the Federal award(s) that the pass-through entity provided. A subrecipient may submit a copy of the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section to a pass-through entity to comply with this notification requirement.

(f) Requests for report copies. In response to requests by a Federal agency or pass-through entity, auditees shall submit the appropriate copies of the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section and, if requested, a copy of any management letters issued by the auditor.

(g) Report retention requirements. Auditees shall keep one copy of the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and one copy of the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section on file for three years from the date of submission to the Federal clearinghouse

designated by OMB. Pass-through entities shall keep subrecipients' submissions on file for three years from date of receipt.

(h) Clearinghouse responsibilities. The Federal clearinghouse designated by OMB shall distribute the reporting packages received in accordance with paragraph (d) (2) of this section and § .235(c) (3) to applicable Federal awarding agencies, maintain a data base of completed audits, provide appropriate information to Federal agencies, and follow up with known auditees which have not submitted the required data collection forms and reporting packages.

(i) Clearinghouse address. The address of the Federal clearinghouse currently designated by OMB is Federal Audit Clearinghouse, Bureau of the Census, 1201 E. 10th Street, Jeffersonville, IN 47132.

(j) Electronic filing. Nothing in this part shall preclude electronic submissions to the Federal clearinghouse in such manner as may be approved by OMB. With OMB approval, the Federal clearinghouse may pilot test methods of electronic submissions.

Subpart D--Federal Agencies and Pass-Through Entities
§ .400 Responsibilities.

(a) Cognizant agency for audit responsibilities. Recipients expending more than \$25 million (\$50 million for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003) a year in Federal awards shall have a cognizant agency for audit. The designated cognizant agency for audit shall be the Federal awarding agency that provides the predominant amount of direct funding to a recipient unless OMB makes a specific cognizant agency for audit assignment.

Following is effective for fiscal years ending on or before December 31, 2003:
To provide for continuity of cognizance, the determination of the predominant amount of direct funding shall be based upon direct Federal awards expended in the recipient's fiscal years ending in 1995, 2000, 2005, and every fifth year thereafter. For example, audit cognizance for periods ending in 1997 through 2000 will be determined based on Federal awards expended in 1995. (However, for States and local governments that expend more than \$25 million a year in Federal awards and have previously assigned cognizant agencies for audit, the requirements of this paragraph are not effective until fiscal years beginning after June 30, 2000.)

Following is effective for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003:
The determination of the predominant amount of direct funding shall be based upon direct Federal awards expended in the recipient's fiscal years ending in 2004, 2009, 2014, and every fifth year thereafter. For example, audit cognizance for periods ending in 2006 through 2010 will be determined based on Federal awards expended in 2004. (However, for 2001 through 2005, the cognizant agency for audit is determined based on the predominant amount of direct Federal awards expended in the recipient's fiscal year ending in 2000).

Notwithstanding the manner in which audit cognizance is determined, a Federal awarding agency with cognizance for an auditee may reassign cognizance to another Federal awarding agency which provides substantial direct funding and agrees to be the cognizant agency for audit. Within 30 days after any reassignment, both the old and the new cognizant agency for audit shall notify the auditee, and, if known, the auditor of the reassignment. The cognizant agency for audit shall:

- (1) Provide technical audit advice and liaison to auditees and auditors.
- (2) Consider auditee requests for extensions to the report

submission due date required by § __.320(a). The cognizant agency for audit may grant extensions for good cause.

(3) Obtain or conduct quality control reviews of selected audits made by non-Federal auditors, and provide the results, when appropriate, to other interested organizations.

(4) Promptly inform other affected Federal agencies and appropriate Federal law enforcement officials of any direct reporting by the auditee or its auditor of irregularities or illegal acts, as required by GAGAS or laws and regulations.

(5) Advise the auditor and, where appropriate, the auditee of any deficiencies found in the audits when the deficiencies require corrective action by the auditor. When advised of deficiencies, the auditee shall work with the auditor to take corrective action. If corrective action is not taken, the cognizant agency for audit shall notify the auditor, the auditee, and applicable Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities of the facts and make recommendations for follow-up action. Major inadequacies or repetitive substandard performance by auditors shall be referred to appropriate State licensing agencies and professional bodies for disciplinary action.

(6) Coordinate, to the extent practical, audits or reviews made by or for Federal agencies that are in addition to the audits made pursuant to this part, so that the additional audits or reviews build upon audits performed in accordance with this part.

(7) Coordinate a management decision for audit findings that affect the Federal programs of more than one agency.

(8) Coordinate the audit work and reporting responsibilities among auditors to achieve the most cost-effective audit.

(9) For biennial audits permitted under § __.220, consider auditee requests to qualify as a low-risk auditee under § __.530(a).

(b) Oversight agency for audit responsibilities. An auditee which does not have a designated cognizant agency for audit will be under the general oversight of the Federal agency determined in accordance with § __.105. The oversight agency for audit:

(1) Shall provide technical advice to auditees and auditors as requested.

(2) May assume all or some of the responsibilities normally performed by a cognizant agency for audit.

(c) Federal awarding agency responsibilities. The Federal awarding agency shall perform the following for the Federal awards it makes:

(1) Identify Federal awards made by informing each recipient of the CFDA title and number, award name and number, award year, and if the award is for R&D. When some of this information is not available, the Federal agency shall provide information necessary to clearly describe the Federal award.

(2) Advise recipients of requirements imposed on them by Federal laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements.

(3) Ensure that audits are completed and reports are received

in a timely manner and in accordance with the requirements of this part.

(4) Provide technical advice and counsel to auditees and auditors as requested.

(5) Issue a management decision on audit findings within six months after receipt of the audit report and ensure that the recipient takes appropriate and timely corrective action.

(6) Assign a person responsible for providing annual updates of the compliance supplement to OMB.

(d) Pass-through entity responsibilities. A pass-through entity shall perform the following for the Federal awards it makes:

(1) Identify Federal awards made by informing each subrecipient of CFDA title and number, award name and number, award year, if the award is R&D, and name of Federal agency. When some of this information is not available, the pass-through entity shall provide the best information available to describe the Federal award.

(2) Advise subrecipients of requirements imposed on them by Federal laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements as well as any supplemental requirements imposed by the pass-through entity.

(3) Monitor the activities of subrecipients as necessary to ensure that Federal awards are used for authorized purposes in compliance with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements and that performance goals are achieved.

(4) Ensure that subrecipients expending \$300,000 (*\$500,000 for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2003*) or more in Federal awards during the subrecipient's fiscal year have met the audit requirements of this part for that fiscal year.

(5) Issue a management decision on audit findings within six months after receipt of the subrecipient's audit report and ensure that the subrecipient takes appropriate and timely corrective action.

(6) Consider whether subrecipient audits necessitate adjustment of the pass-through entity's own records.

(7) Require each subrecipient to permit the pass-through entity and auditors to have access to the records and financial statements as necessary for the pass-through entity to comply with this part.

§ .405 Management decision.

(a) General. The management decision shall clearly state whether or not the audit finding is sustained, the reasons for the decision, and the expected auditee action to repay disallowed costs, make financial adjustments, or take other action. If the auditee has not completed corrective action, a timetable for follow-up should be given. Prior to issuing the management decision, the Federal agency or pass-through entity may request additional information or documentation from the auditee, including a request for auditor assurance related to the documentation, as a way of mitigating disallowed costs. The management decision should describe any appeal process available to the auditee.

(b) Federal agency. As provided in § .400(a)(7), the cognizant agency for audit shall be responsible for coordinating a management decision for audit findings that affect the programs of more than one Federal agency.

As provided in § __.400(c)(5), a Federal awarding agency is responsible for issuing a management decision for findings that relate to Federal awards it makes to recipients. Alternate arrangements may be made on a case-by-case basis by agreement among the Federal agencies concerned.

(c) Pass-through entity. As provided in § __.400(d)(5), the pass-through entity shall be responsible for making the management decision for audit findings that relate to Federal awards it makes to subrecipients.

(d) Time requirements. The entity responsible for making the management decision shall do so within six months of receipt of the audit report. Corrective action should be initiated within six months after receipt of the audit report and proceed as rapidly as possible.

(e) Reference numbers. Management decisions shall include the reference numbers the auditor assigned to each audit finding in accordance with § __.510(c).

Subpart E--Auditors

§ __.500 Scope of audit.

(a) General. The audit shall be conducted in accordance with GAGAS. The audit shall cover the entire operations of the auditee; or, at the option of the auditee, such audit shall include a series of audits that cover departments, agencies, and other organizational units which expended or otherwise administered Federal awards during such fiscal year, provided that each such audit shall encompass the financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for each such department, agency, and other organizational unit, which shall be considered to be a non-Federal entity. The financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards shall be for the same fiscal year.

(b) Financial statements. The auditor shall determine whether the financial statements of the auditee are presented fairly in all material respects in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The auditor shall also determine whether the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards is presented fairly in all material respects in relation to the auditee's financial statements taken as a whole.

(c) Internal control. (1) In addition to the requirements of GAGAS, the auditor shall perform procedures to obtain an understanding of internal control over Federal programs sufficient to plan the audit to support a low assessed level of control risk for major programs.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (c)(3) of this section, the auditor shall:

(i) Plan the testing of internal control over major programs to support a low assessed level of control risk for the assertions relevant to the compliance requirements for each major program; and

(ii) Perform testing of internal control as planned in paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section.

(3) When internal control over some or all of the compliance requirements for a major program are likely to be ineffective in preventing or detecting noncompliance, the planning and performing of testing described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section are not required for those compliance requirements. However, the auditor shall report a significant deficiency (including whether any such condition is a material weakness) in accordance with § __.510, assess the related control risk at the maximum, and consider whether additional compliance tests are required because of ineffective

internal control.

(d) Compliance. (1) In addition to the requirements of GAGAS, the auditor shall determine whether the auditee has complied with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements that may have a direct and material effect on each of its major programs.

(2) The principal compliance requirements applicable to most Federal programs and the compliance requirements of the largest Federal programs are included in the compliance supplement.

(3) For the compliance requirements related to Federal programs contained in the compliance supplement, an audit of these compliance requirements will meet the requirements of this part. Where there have been changes to the compliance requirements and the changes are not reflected in the compliance supplement, the auditor shall determine the current compliance requirements and modify the audit procedures accordingly. For those Federal programs not covered in the compliance supplement, the auditor should use the types of compliance requirements contained in the compliance supplement as guidance for identifying the types of compliance requirements to test, and determine the requirements governing the Federal program by reviewing the provisions of contracts and grant agreements and the laws and regulations referred to in such contracts and grant agreements.

(4) The compliance testing shall include tests of transactions and such other auditing procedures necessary to provide the auditor sufficient evidence to support an opinion on compliance.

(e) Audit follow-up. The auditor shall follow-up on prior audit findings, perform procedures to assess the reasonableness of the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee in accordance with § __.315(b), and report, as a current year audit finding, when the auditor concludes that the summary schedule of prior audit findings materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding. The auditor shall perform audit follow-up procedures regardless of whether a prior audit finding relates to a major program in the current year.

(f) Data Collection Form. As required in § __.320(b)(3), the auditor shall complete and sign specified sections of the data collection form.

§ __.505 Audit reporting.

The auditor's report(s) may be in the form of either combined or separate reports and may be organized differently from the manner presented in this section. The auditor's report(s) shall state that the audit was conducted in accordance with this part and include the following:

(a) An opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the financial statements are presented fairly in all material respects in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles and an opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards is presented fairly in all material respects in relation to the financial statements taken as a whole.

(b) A report on internal control related to the financial statements and major programs. This report shall describe the scope of testing of internal control and the results of the tests, and, where applicable, refer to the separate schedule of findings and questioned costs described in paragraph (d) of this section.

(c) A report on compliance with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a

material effect on the financial statements. This report shall also include an opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the auditee complied with laws, regulations, and the provisions of contracts or grant agreements which could have a direct and material effect on each major program, and, where applicable, refer to the separate schedule of findings and questioned costs described in paragraph (d) of this section.

(d) A schedule of findings and questioned costs which shall include the following three components:

(1) A summary of the auditor's results which shall include:

(i) The type of report the auditor issued on the financial statements of the auditee (i.e., unqualified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion);

(ii) Where applicable, a statement that significant deficiencies in internal control were disclosed by the audit of the financial statements and whether any such conditions were material weaknesses;

(iii) A statement as to whether the audit disclosed any noncompliance which is material to the financial statements of the auditee;

(iv) Where applicable, a statement that significant deficiencies in internal control over major programs were disclosed by the audit and whether any such conditions were material weaknesses;

(v) The type of report the auditor issued on compliance for major programs (i.e., unqualified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion);

(vi) A statement as to whether the audit disclosed any audit findings which the auditor is required to report under §___.510(a);

(vii) An identification of major programs;

(viii) The dollar threshold used to distinguish between Type A and Type B programs, as described in §___.520(b); and

(ix) A statement as to whether the auditee qualified as a low-risk auditee under §___.530.

(2) Findings relating to the financial statements which are required to be reported in accordance with GAGAS.

(3) Findings and questioned costs for Federal awards which shall include audit findings as defined in §___.510(a).

(i) Audit findings (e.g., internal control findings, compliance findings, questioned costs, or fraud) which relate to the same issue should be presented as a single audit finding. Where practical, audit findings should be organized by Federal agency or pass-through entity.

(ii) Audit findings which relate to both the financial statements and Federal awards, as reported under paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section, respectively, should be reported in both sections of the schedule. However, the reporting in one section of the schedule may be in summary form with a reference to a detailed reporting in the other section of the schedule.

§___.510 Audit findings.

(a) Audit findings reported. The auditor shall report the following as audit findings in a schedule of findings and questioned costs:

(1) Significant deficiencies in internal control over major programs. The auditor's determination of whether a deficiency in internal control is a significant deficiency for the purpose of reporting an audit finding is in relation to a type of compliance requirement for a major program or an audit objective identified in the compliance supplement. The auditor shall identify significant deficiencies which are individually or cumulatively material weaknesses.

(2) Material noncompliance with the provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, or grant agreements related to a major program. The auditor's determination of whether a noncompliance with the provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, or grant agreements is material for the purpose of reporting an audit finding is in relation to a type of compliance requirement for a major program or an audit objective identified in the compliance supplement.

(3) Known questioned costs which are greater than \$10,000 for a type of compliance requirement for a major program. Known questioned costs are those specifically identified by the auditor. In evaluating the effect of questioned costs on the opinion on compliance, the auditor considers the best estimate of total costs questioned (likely questioned costs), not just the questioned costs specifically identified (known questioned costs). The auditor shall also report known questioned costs when likely questioned costs are greater than \$10,000 for a type of compliance requirement for a major program. In reporting questioned costs, the auditor shall include information to provide proper perspective for judging the prevalence and consequences of the questioned costs.

(4) Known questioned costs which are greater than \$10,000 for a Federal program which is not audited as a major program. Except for audit follow-up, the auditor is not required under this part to perform audit procedures for such a Federal program; therefore, the auditor will normally not find questioned costs for a program which is not audited as a major program. However, if the auditor does become aware of questioned costs for a Federal program which is not audited as a major program (e.g., as part of audit follow-up or other audit procedures) and the known questioned costs are greater than \$10,000, then the auditor shall report this as an audit finding.

(5) The circumstances concerning why the auditor's report on compliance for major programs is other than an unqualified opinion, unless such circumstances are otherwise reported as audit findings in the schedule of findings and questioned costs for Federal awards.

(6) Known fraud affecting a Federal award, unless such fraud is otherwise reported as an audit finding in the schedule of findings and questioned costs for Federal awards. This paragraph does not require the auditor to make an additional reporting when the auditor confirms that the fraud was reported outside of the auditor's reports under the direct reporting requirements of GAGAS.

(7) Instances where the results of audit follow-up procedures disclosed that the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee in accordance with § __.315(b) materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding.

(b) Audit finding detail. Audit findings shall be presented in sufficient detail for the auditee to prepare a corrective action plan and take corrective action and for Federal agencies and pass-through entities to arrive at a management decision. The following specific information shall be

included, as applicable, in audit findings:

(1) Federal program and specific Federal award identification including the CFDA title and number, Federal award number and year, name of Federal agency, and name of the applicable pass-through entity. When information, such as the CFDA title and number or Federal award number, is not available, the auditor shall provide the best information available to describe the Federal award.

(2) The criteria or specific requirement upon which the audit finding is based, including statutory, regulatory, or other citation.

(3) The condition found, including facts that support the deficiency identified in the audit finding.

(4) Identification of questioned costs and how they were computed.

(5) Information to provide proper perspective for judging the prevalence and consequences of the audit findings, such as whether the audit findings represent an isolated instance or a systemic problem. Where appropriate, instances identified shall be related to the universe and the number of cases examined and be quantified in terms of dollar value.

(6) The possible asserted effect to provide sufficient information to the auditee and Federal agency, or pass-through entity in the case of a subrecipient, to permit them to determine the cause and effect to facilitate prompt and proper corrective action.

(7) Recommendations to prevent future occurrences of the deficiency identified in the audit finding.

(8) Views of responsible officials of the auditee when there is disagreement with the audit findings, to the extent practical.

(c) Reference numbers. Each audit finding in the schedule of findings and questioned costs shall include a reference number to allow for easy referencing of the audit findings during follow-up.

§ .515 **Audit working papers.**

(a) Retention of working papers. The auditor shall retain working papers and reports for a minimum of three years after the date of issuance of the auditor's report(s) to the auditee, unless the auditor is notified in writing by the cognizant agency for audit, oversight agency for audit, or pass-through entity to extend the retention period. When the auditor is aware that the Federal awarding agency, pass-through entity, or auditee is contesting an audit finding, the auditor shall contact the parties contesting the audit finding for guidance prior to destruction of the working papers and reports.

(b) Access to working papers. Audit working papers shall be made available upon request to the cognizant or oversight agency for audit or its designee, a Federal agency providing direct or indirect funding, or GAO at the completion of the audit, as part of a quality review, to resolve audit findings, or to carry out oversight responsibilities consistent with the purposes of this part. Access to working papers includes the right of Federal agencies to obtain copies of working papers, as is reasonable and necessary.

§ __.520 Major program determination.

(a) General. The auditor shall use a risk-based approach to determine which Federal programs are major programs. This risk-based approach shall include consideration of: Current and prior audit experience, oversight by Federal agencies and pass-through entities, and the inherent risk of the Federal program. The process in paragraphs (b) through (i) of this section shall be followed.

(b) Step 1. (1) The auditor shall identify the larger Federal programs, which shall be labeled Type A programs. Type A programs are defined as Federal programs with Federal awards expended during the audit period exceeding the larger of:

(i) \$300,000 or three percent (.03) of total Federal awards expended in the case of an auditee for which total Federal awards expended equal or exceed \$300,000 but are less than or equal to \$100 million.

(ii) \$3 million or three-tenths of one percent (.003) of total Federal awards expended in the case of an auditee for which total Federal awards expended exceed \$100 million but are less than or equal to \$10 billion.

(iii) \$30 million or 15 hundredths of one percent (.0015) of total Federal awards expended in the case of an auditee for which total Federal awards expended exceed \$10 billion.

(2) Federal programs not labeled Type A under paragraph (b) (1) of this section shall be labeled Type B programs.

(3) The inclusion of large loan and loan guarantees (loans) should not result in the exclusion of other programs as Type A programs. When a Federal program providing loans significantly affects the number or size of Type A programs, the auditor shall consider this Federal program as a Type A program and exclude its values in determining other Type A programs.

(4) For biennial audits permitted under § __.220, the determination of Type A and Type B programs shall be based upon the Federal awards expended during the two-year period.

(c) Step 2. (1) The auditor shall identify Type A programs which are low-risk. For a Type A program to be considered low-risk, it shall have been audited as a major program in at least one of the two most recent audit periods (in the most recent audit period in the case of a biennial audit), and, in the most recent audit period, it shall have had no audit findings under § __.510(a). However, the auditor may use judgment and consider that audit findings from questioned costs under § __.510(a) (3) and § __.510(a) (4), fraud under § __.510(a) (6), and audit follow-up for the summary schedule of prior audit findings under § __.510(a) (7) do not preclude the Type A program from being low-risk. The auditor shall consider: the criteria in § __.525(c), § __.525(d) (1), § __.525(d) (2), and § __.525(d) (3); the results of audit follow-up; whether any changes in personnel or systems affecting a Type A program have significantly increased risk; and apply professional judgment in determining whether a Type A program is low-risk.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (c) (1) of this section, OMB may approve a Federal awarding agency's request that a Type A program at certain recipients may not be considered low-risk. For example, it may be necessary for a large Type A program to be audited as major each year at particular recipients to allow the Federal agency to comply with the Government Management Reform Act of 1994 (31 U.S.C. 3515). The Federal agency shall notify the recipient and, if known, the auditor at least 180 days prior to the

end of the fiscal year to be audited of OMB's approval.

(d) Step 3. (1) The auditor shall identify Type B programs which are high-risk using professional judgment and the criteria in § .525. However, should the auditor select Option 2 under Step 4 (paragraph (e)(2)(i)(B) of this section), the auditor is not required to identify more high-risk Type B programs than the number of low-risk Type A programs. Except for known significant deficiencies in internal control or compliance problems as discussed in § .525(b)(1), § .525(b)(2), and § .525(c)(1), a single criteria in § .525 would seldom cause a Type B program to be considered high-risk.

(2) The auditor is not expected to perform risk assessments on relatively small Federal programs. Therefore, the auditor is only required to perform risk assessments on Type B programs that exceed the larger of:

(i) \$100,000 or three-tenths of one percent (.003) of total Federal awards expended when the auditee has less than or equal to \$100 million in total Federal awards expended.

(ii) \$300,000 or three-hundredths of one percent (.0003) of total Federal awards expended when the auditee has more than \$100 million in total Federal awards expended.

(e) Step 4. At a minimum, the auditor shall audit all of the following as major programs:

(1) All Type A programs, except the auditor may exclude any Type A programs identified as low-risk under Step 2 (paragraph (c)(1) of this section).

(2) (i) High-risk Type B programs as identified under either of the following two options:

(A) Option 1. At least one half of the Type B programs identified as high-risk under Step 3 (paragraph (d) of this section), except this paragraph (e)(2)(i)(A) does not require the auditor to audit more high-risk Type B programs than the number of low-risk Type A programs identified as low-risk under Step 2.

(B) Option 2. One high-risk Type B program for each Type A program identified as low-risk under Step 2.

(ii) When identifying which high-risk Type B programs to audit as major under either Option 1 or 2 in paragraph (e)(2)(i)(A) or (B), the auditor is encouraged to use an approach which provides an opportunity for different high-risk Type B programs to be audited as major over a period of time.

(3) Such additional programs as may be necessary to comply with the percentage of coverage rule discussed in paragraph (f) of this section. This paragraph (e)(3) may require the auditor to audit more programs as major than the number of Type A programs.

(f) Percentage of coverage rule. The auditor shall audit as major programs Federal programs with Federal awards expended that, in the aggregate, encompass at least 50 percent of total Federal awards expended. If the auditee meets the criteria in § .530 for a low-risk auditee, the auditor need only audit as major programs Federal programs with Federal awards expended that, in the aggregate, encompass at least 25 percent of total Federal awards expended.

(g) Documentation of risk. The auditor shall document in the working

papers the risk analysis process used in determining major programs.

(h) Auditor's judgment. When the major program determination was performed and documented in accordance with this part, the auditor's judgment in applying the risk-based approach to determine major programs shall be presumed correct. Challenges by Federal agencies and pass-through entities shall only be for clearly improper use of the guidance in this part. However, Federal agencies and pass-through entities may provide auditors guidance about the risk of a particular Federal program and the auditor shall consider this guidance in determining major programs in audits not yet completed.

(i) Deviation from use of risk criteria. For first-year audits, the auditor may elect to determine major programs as all Type A programs plus any Type B programs as necessary to meet the percentage of coverage rule discussed in paragraph (f) of this section. Under this option, the auditor would not be required to perform the procedures discussed in paragraphs (c), (d), and (e) of this section.

(1) A first-year audit is the first year the entity is audited under this part or the first year of a change of auditors.

(2) To ensure that a frequent change of auditors would not preclude audit of high-risk Type B programs, this election for first-year audits may not be used by an auditee more than once in every three years.

§ .525 Criteria for Federal program risk.

(a) General. The auditor's determination should be based on an overall evaluation of the risk of noncompliance occurring which could be material to the Federal program. The auditor shall use auditor judgment and consider criteria, such as described in paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section, to identify risk in Federal programs. Also, as part of the risk analysis, the auditor may wish to discuss a particular Federal program with auditee management and the Federal agency or pass-through entity.

(b) Current and prior audit experience. (1) Weaknesses in internal control over Federal programs would indicate higher risk. Consideration should be given to the control environment over Federal programs and such factors as the expectation of management's adherence to applicable laws and regulations and the provisions of contracts and grant agreements and the competence and experience of personnel who administer the Federal programs.

(i) A Federal program administered under multiple internal control structures may have higher risk. When assessing risk in a large single audit, the auditor shall consider whether weaknesses are isolated in a single operating unit (e.g., one college campus) or pervasive throughout the entity.

(ii) When significant parts of a Federal program are passed through to subrecipients, a weak system for monitoring subrecipients would indicate higher risk.

(iii) The extent to which computer processing is used to administer Federal programs, as well as the complexity of that processing, should be considered by the auditor in assessing risk. New and recently modified computer systems may also indicate risk.

(2) Prior audit findings would indicate higher risk, particularly when the situations identified in the audit findings could have a significant impact on a Federal program or have not been corrected.

(3) Federal programs not recently audited as major programs

may be of higher risk than Federal programs recently audited as major programs without audit findings.

(c) Oversight exercised by Federal agencies and pass-through entities.

(1) Oversight exercised by Federal agencies or pass-through entities could indicate risk. For example, recent monitoring or other reviews performed by an oversight entity which disclosed no significant problems would indicate lower risk. However, monitoring which disclosed significant problems would indicate higher risk.

(2) Federal agencies, with the concurrence of OMB, may identify Federal programs which are higher risk. OMB plans to provide this identification in the compliance supplement.

(d) Inherent risk of the Federal program. (1) The nature of a Federal program may indicate risk. Consideration should be given to the complexity of the program and the extent to which the Federal program contracts for goods and services. For example, Federal programs that disburse funds through third party contracts or have eligibility criteria may be of higher risk. Federal programs primarily involving staff payroll costs may have a high-risk for time and effort reporting, but otherwise be at low-risk.

(2) The phase of a Federal program in its life cycle at the Federal agency may indicate risk. For example, a new Federal program with new or interim regulations may have higher risk than an established program with time-tested regulations. Also, significant changes in Federal programs, laws, regulations, or the provisions of contracts or grant agreements may increase risk.

(3) The phase of a Federal program in its life cycle at the auditee may indicate risk. For example, during the first and last years that an auditee participates in a Federal program, the risk may be higher due to start-up or closeout of program activities and staff.

(4) Type B programs with larger Federal awards expended would be of higher risk than programs with substantially smaller Federal awards expended.

§ .530 **Criteria for a low-risk auditee.**

An auditee which meets all of the following conditions for each of the preceding two years (or, in the case of biennial audits, preceding two audit periods) shall qualify as a low-risk auditee and be eligible for reduced audit coverage in accordance with § .520:

(a) Single audits were performed on an annual basis in accordance with the provisions of this part. A non-Federal entity that has biennial audits does not qualify as a low-risk auditee, unless agreed to in advance by the cognizant or oversight agency for audit.

(b) The auditor's opinions on the financial statements and the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards were unqualified. However, the cognizant or oversight agency for audit may judge that an opinion qualification does not affect the management of Federal awards and provide a waiver.

(c) There were no deficiencies in internal control which were identified as material weaknesses under the requirements of GAGAS. However, the cognizant or oversight agency for audit may judge that any identified material weaknesses do not affect the management of Federal awards and provide a waiver.

(d) None of the Federal programs had audit findings from any of the following in either of the preceding two years (or, in the case of biennial audits, preceding two audit periods) in which they were classified as Type A programs:

(1) Internal control deficiencies which were identified as material weaknesses;

(2) Noncompliance with the provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, or grant agreements which have a material effect on the Type A program; or

(3) Known or likely questioned costs that exceed five percent of the total Federal awards expended for a Type A program during the year.

Appendix A to Part ___ - Data Collection Form (Form SF-SAC)
[insert SF-SAC after finalized]

Appendix B to Part ___ - Circular A-133 Compliance Supplement

Note: Provisional OMB Circular A-133 Compliance Supplement is available from the Office of Administration, Publications Office, room 2200, New Executive Office Building, Washington, DC 20503.

Department of Housing & Urban Development

24 CFR Part 50

**Protection and Enhancement
of Environmental Quality**

Code of Federal Regulations

Title 24 - Housing and Urban Development

Volume: 1

Date: 2010-04-01

Original Date: 2010-04-01

Title: PART 50 - PROTECTION AND ENHANCEMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY

Context: Title 24 - Housing and Urban Development. Subtitle A - Office of the Secretary, Department of Housing and Urban Development.

Pt. 50

PART 50—PROTECTION AND ENHANCEMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY

Subpart A—General: Federal Laws and Authorities

Sec.

- 50.1** Purpose, authority, and applicability.
- 50.2** Terms and abbreviations.
- 50.3** Environmental policy.
- 50.4** Related Federal laws and authorities.

Subpart B—General Policy: Responsibilities and Program Coverage

- 50.10** Basic environmental responsibility.
- 50.11** Responsibility of the HUD approving official.

Subpart C—General Policy: Decision Points

- 50.16** Decision points for policy actions.
- 50.17** Decision points for projects.

Subpart D—General Policy: Environmental Review Procedures

- 50.18** General.
- 50.19** Categorical exclusions not subject to the Federal laws and authorities cited in § 50.4.
- 50.20** Categorical exclusions subject to the Federal laws and authorities cited in § 50.4.
- 50.21** Aggregation.
- 50.22** Environmental management and monitoring.
- 50.23** Public participation.
- 50.24** HUD review of another agency's EIS.

Subpart E—Environmental Assessments and Related Reviews

- 50.31** The EA.
- 50.32** Responsibility for environmental processing.
- 50.33** Action resulting from the assessment.
- 50.34** Time delays for exceptional circumstances.
- 50.35** Use of prior environmental assessments.
- 50.36** Updating of environmental reviews.

Subpart F—Environmental Impact Statements

- 50.41** EIS policy.
50.42 Cases when an EIS is required.
50.43 Emergencies.

Authority 42 U.S.C. 3535(d) and 4332; and Executive Order 11991, 3 CFR, 1977 Comp., p. 123.

Source: 61 FR 50916, Sept. 27, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General: Federal Laws and Authorities

§ 50.1 Purpose, authority, and applicability.

(a) This part implements the policies of the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and other environmental requirements (as specified in § 50.4).

(b) NEPA (42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq.*), establishes national policy, goals and procedures for protecting, restoring and enhancing environmental quality. NEPA is implemented by Executive Order 11514 of March 5, 1970, (3 CFR, 1966-1970 Comp., p. 902) as amended by Executive Order 11991 of May 24, 1977, (3 CFR, 1977 Comp., p. 123) and by the Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) Regulations, 40 CFR parts 1500-1508.

(c) The regulations issued by CEQ at 40 CFR parts 1500-1508 establish the basic procedural requirements for compliance with NEPA. These procedures are to be followed by all Federal agencies and are incorporated by reference into this part. This part, therefore, provides supplemental instructions to reflect the particular nature of HUD programs, and is to be used in tandem with 40 CFR parts 1500-1508 and regulations that implement authorities cited at § 50.4.

(d) These regulations apply to all HUD policy actions (as defined in § 50.16), and to all HUD project actions (see § 50.2(a)(2)). Also, they apply to projects and activities carried out by recipients subject to environmental policy and procedures of 24 CFR part 58, when the recipient that is regulated under 24 CFR part 58 claims the lack of legal capacity to assume the Secretary's environmental review responsibilities and the claim is approved by HUD or when HUD determines to conduct an environmental review itself in place of a nonrecipient responsible entity. For programs, activities or actions not specifically identified or when there are questions regarding the applicability of this part, the Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development shall be consulted.

§ 50.2 Terms and abbreviations.

(a) The definitions for most of the key terms or phrases contained in this part appear in 40 CFR part 1508 and in the authorities cited in § 50.4.

The following definitions also apply to this part:

Environmental review means a process for complying with NEPA (through an EA or EIS) and/or with the laws and authorities cited in § 50.4.

HUD approving official means the HUD official authorized to make the approval decision for any proposed policy or project subject to this part.

Project means an activity, or a group of integrally-related activities, undertaken directly by HUD or proposed for HUD assistance or insurance.

(b) The following abbreviations are used throughout this part:

AS/CPD—Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development.

CEQ—Council on Environmental Quality

EA—Environmental Assessment

EIS—Environmental Impact Statement

FONSI—Finding of No Significant Impact

HUD—Department of Housing and Urban Development

NEPA—National Environmental Policy Act

NOI/EIS—Notice of Intent to Prepare an Environmental Impact Statement

§ 50.3. Environmental policy.

- (a) It is the policy of the Department to reject proposals which have significant adverse environmental impacts and to encourage the modification of projects in order to enhance environmental quality and minimize environmental harm.
- (b) The HUD approving official shall consider environmental and other Departmental objectives in the decisionmaking process.
- (c) When EA's or EIS's or reviews under § 50.4 reveal conditions or safeguards that should be implemented once a proposal is approved in order to protect and enhance environmental quality or minimize adverse environmental impacts, such conditions or safeguards must be included in agreements or other relevant documents.
- (d) A systematic, interdisciplinary approach shall be used to assure the integrated use of the natural and social sciences and the environmental design arts in making decisions.
- (e) Environmental impacts shall be evaluated on as comprehensive a scale as is practicable.
- (f) HUD offices shall begin the environmental review process at the earliest possible time so that potential conflicts between program procedures and environmental requirements are identified at an early stage.
- (g) Applicants for HUD assistance shall be advised of environmental requirements and consultation with governmental agencies and individuals shall take place at the earliest time feasible.
- (h) For HUD grant programs in which the funding approval for an applicant's program must occur before the applicant's selection of properties, the application shall contain an *assurance* that the applicant agrees to assist HUD to comply with this part and that the applicant shall:
- (1) Supply HUD with all available, relevant information necessary for HUD to perform for each property any environmental review required by this part;
 - (2) Carry out mitigating measures required by HUD or select alternate eligible property; and
 - (3) Not acquire, rehabilitate, convert, lease, repair or construct property, nor commit or expend HUD or local funds for these program activities with respect to any eligible property, until HUD approval of the property is received.
- (i)(1) It is HUD policy that all property proposed for use in HUD programs be free of hazardous materials, contamination, toxic chemicals and gasses, and radioactive substances, where a hazard could affect the health and safety of occupants or conflict with the intended utilization of the property.
- (2) HUD environmental review of multifamily and non-residential properties shall include evaluation of previous uses of the site and other evidence of contamination on or near the site, to assure that occupants of proposed sites are not adversely affected by the hazards listed in paragraph (i)(1) of this section.
- (3) Particular attention should be given to any proposed site on or in the general proximity of such areas as dumps, landfills, industrial sites or other locations that contain hazardous wastes.
- (4) HUD shall require the use of current techniques by qualified professionals to undertake investigations determined necessary.

§ 50.4 Related Federal laws and authorities.

HUD and/or applicants must comply, where applicable, with all environmental requirements, guidelines and statutory obligations under the following authorities and HUD standards:

- (a) *Historic properties.* (1) The National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (16 U.S.C. 470 *et seq.*), as amended.
- (2) Executive Order 11593, Protection and Enhancement of the Cultural Environment, May 13, 1971 (3 CFR, 1971-1975 Comp., p. 559).

(3) The Archaeological and Historic Preservation Act of 1974, which amends the Reservoir Salvage Act of 1960 (16 U.S.C. 469 *et seq.*).

(4) Procedures for the Protection of Historic and Cultural Properties (Advisory Council on Historic Preservation—36 CFR part 800).

(b) *Flood insurance, floodplain management and wetland protection.* (1) Flood Disaster Protection Act of 1973 (42 U.S.C. 4001-4128) and the National Flood Insurance Reform Act of 1994 (Pub.L. 103-325, 108 Stat. 2160).

(2) HUD Procedure for the Implementation of Executive Order 11988 (3 CFR, 1977 Comp., p. 117)—24 CFR part 55, Floodplain Management.

(3) Executive Order 11990 (Protection of Wetlands), (3 CFR, 1977 Comp., p. 121).

(c) *Coastal areas protection and management.* (1) The Coastal Barrier Resources Act, as amended by the Coastal Barrier Improvement Act of 1990 (16 U.S.C. 3501 *et seq.*).

(2) The Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 (16 U.S.C. 1451 *et seq.*), as amended.

(d) *Sole source aquifers.* The Safe Drinking Water Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 201, 300 *et seq.*, and 21 U.S.C. 349), as amended. (See 40 CFR part 149.)

(e) *Endangered species.* The Endangered Species Act of 1973 (16 U.S.C. 1531 *et seq.*), as amended. (See 50 CFR part 402.)

(f) *Wild and scenic rivers.* The Wild and Scenic Rivers Act (16 U.S.C. 1271 *et seq.*), as amended.

(g) *Water quality.* The Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended by the Federal Water Pollution Control Act Amendments of 1972 (33 U.S.C. 1251 *et seq.*), and later enactments.

(h) *Air quality.* The Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 *et seq.*), as amended. (See 40 CFR parts 6, 51, and 93.)

(i) *Solid waste management.* (1) The Solid Waste Disposal Act, as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 (42 U.S.C. 6901 *et seq.*), and later enactments.

(2) The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act of 1980 (42 U.S.C. 9601 *et seq.*), as amended.

(j) *Farmlands protection.* The Farmland Protection Policy Act of 1981 (7 U.S.C. 4201 *et seq.*), as amended. (See 7 CFR part 658.)

(k) *HUD environmental standards.* Applicable criteria and standards specified in HUD environmental regulations (24 CFR part 51).

(l) *Environmental justice.* Executive Order 12898—Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations (3 CFR, 1994 Comp., p. 859).

Subpart B—General Policy: Responsibilities and Program Coverage

§ 50.10 Basic environmental responsibility.

(a) It is the responsibility of all Assistant Secretaries, the General Counsel, and the HUD approving official to assure that the requirements of this part are implemented.

(b) The Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development (A/S CPD), represented by the Office of Community Viability, whose Director shall serve as the Departmental Environmental Clearance Officer (DECO), is assigned the overall Departmental responsibility for environmental policies and procedures for compliance with NEPA and the related laws and authorities. To the extent permitted by applicable laws and the CEQ regulations, the A/S CPD shall approve waivers and exceptions or establish criteria for exceptions from the requirements of this part.

§ 50.11 Responsibility of the HUD approving official.

(a) The HUD approving official shall make an independent evaluation of the environmental issues, take responsibility for the scope and content of the compliance finding, EA or EIS, and make the environmental finding, where applicable. (Also, see § 50.32.)

(b) Copies of environmental reviews and findings shall be maintained in the project file for projects, in the rules docket files for **Federal Register** publications, and in program files for non-**Federal Register** policy documents.

Subpart C—General Policy: Decision Points

§ 50.16 Decision points for policy actions.

Either an EA and FONSI or an EIS on all policy actions not meeting the criteria of § 50.19 shall be completed prior to the approval action. Policy actions include all proposed **Federal Register** policy documents and other policy-related Federal actions (40 CFR 1508.18). The decision as to whether a proposed policy action is categorically excluded from an EA shall be made by the Program Environmental Clearance Officer (PECO) in Headquarters as early as possible. Where the PECO has any doubt as to whether a proposed action qualifies for exclusion, the PECO shall request a determination by the AS/CPD. The EA and FONSI may be combined into a single document.

§ 50.17 Decision points for projects.

Either an EA and FONSI or an EIS for individual projects shall be completed before the applicable program decision points below for projects not meeting the criteria of § 50.20. Compliance with applicable authorities cited in § 50.4 shall be completed before the applicable program decision points below unless the project meets the criteria for exclusion under § 50.19.

(a) *New Construction.* (1) Project mortgage insurance or other financial assistance for multifamily housing projects (including sections 202 and 811), nursing homes, hospitals, group practice facilities and manufactured home parks: Issuance of Site Appraisal and Market Analysis (SAMA) Letter or initial equivalent indication of HUD approval of a specific site;

(2) *Public Housing: HUD approval of the proposal.*

(3) *Loan Guarantee Recovery Fund Program (24 CFR part 573).* HUD issuance of a letter of commitment or initial equivalent indication of HUD approval.

(b) *Rehabilitation projects.* Use the decision points under "new construction" for HUD programs cited in paragraph (a) of this section; otherwise the decision point is the HUD project approval.

(c) *Public housing modernization programs.* HUD approval of the modernization grants.

(d) *Property Disposition.* Multifamily structures, college housing, nursing homes, manufactured homes and parks, group practice facilities, vacant land and one to four family structures: HUD approval of the Disposition Program.

(e) *HUD programs subject to 24 CFR part 58.* For cases in which HUD exercises environmental responsibility under this part where a recipient lacks legal capacity to do so or HUD determines to do so in place of a nonrecipient responsible entity under 24 CFR part 58 (see § 50.1(d)), the decision point is: HUD's execution of an agreement or contract, whichever comes first, or in the case of Section 8 Project-Based Certificate Assistance and Moderate Rehabilitation, HUD notification to the Public Housing Agency to proceed with execution of an Agreement to Enter into Housing Assistance Payments (HAP) Contract.

(f) *Section 50.3(h).* Notwithstanding the other paragraphs of this section, the decision point for grant programs in which HUD approval of funding for an applicant's program must occur before the applicant's selection of properties for use in its program is: HUD approval of specific properties.

(g) *Stewart B. McKinney Homeless Assistance Act Programs.* Where the recipients are nonprofit organizations or governmental entities with special or limited purpose powers, the decision point is: HUD project approval.

(h) *Programs not specifically covered in this section.* Consult with the AS/CPD for decision points.

Subpart D—General Policy: Environmental Review Procedures

§ 50.18 General.

HUD may, from time to time, complete programmatic reviews that further avoid the necessity of complying with the laws and authorities in § 50.4 on a property-by-property basis.

§ 50.19 **Categorical exclusions not subject to the Federal laws and authorities cited in § 50.4.**

(a) *General.* The activities and related approvals of policy documents listed in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section are not subject to the individual compliance requirements of the Federal laws and authorities cited in § 50.4, unless otherwise indicated below. These activities and approvals of policy documents are also categorically excluded from the EA required by NEPA except in extraordinary circumstances (§ 50.20(b)). HUD approval or implementation of these categories of activities and policy documents does not require environmental review, because they do not alter physical conditions in a manner or to an extent that would require review under NEPA or the other laws and authorities cited at § 50.4.

(b) *Activities.* (1) Environmental and other studies, resource identification and the development of plans and strategies.

(2) Information and financial advisory services.

(3) Administrative and management expenses.

(4) Public services that will not have a physical impact or result in any physical changes, including but not limited to services concerned with employment, crime prevention, child care, health, drug abuse, education, counseling, energy conservation and welfare or recreational needs.

(5) Inspections and testing of properties for hazards or defects.

(6) Purchase of insurance.

(7) Purchase of tools.

(8) Engineering or design costs.

(9) Technical assistance and training.

(10) Assistance for temporary or permanent improvements that do not alter environmental conditions and are limited to protection, repair or restoration activities necessary only to control or arrest the effects from disasters or imminent threats to public safety including those resulting from physical deterioration.

(11) Tenant-based rental assistance.

(12) Supportive services including, but not limited to, health care, housing services, permanent housing placement, day care, nutritional services, short-term payments for rent/mortgage/utility costs, and assistance in gaining access to local, State, and Federal government benefits and services.

(13) Operating costs including maintenance, security, operation, utilities, furnishings, equipment, supplies, staff training and recruitment and other incidental costs; however, in the case of equipment, compliance with § 50.4(b)(1) is required.

(14) Economic development activities, including but not limited to, equipment purchase, inventory financing, interest subsidy, operating expenses and similar costs not associated with construction or physical expansion of existing facilities; however, in the case of equipment purchase, compliance with § 50.4(b)(1) is required.

(15) Activities to assist homebuyers to purchase existing dwelling units or dwelling units under construction, including closing costs and downpayment assistance, interest buydowns, and similar activities that result in the transfer of title.

(16) Housing pre-development costs including legal, consulting, developer and other costs related to site options, project financing, administrative costs and fees for loan commitments, zoning approvals, and other related activities which do not have a physical impact.

(17) HUD's insurance of one-to-four family mortgages under the Direct Endorsement program, the insurance of one-to-four family mortgages under the Lender Insurance program, and HUD's guarantee of loans for one-to-four family dwellings under the Direct Guarantee procedure for the Indian Housing loan guarantee program, without any HUD review or approval before the completion

of construction or rehabilitation and the loan closing; and HUD's acceptance for insurance of loans insured under Title I of the National Housing Act; however, compliance with §§ 50.4(b)(1) and (c)(1) and 24 CFR 51.303(a)(3) is required.

(18) HUD's endorsement of one-to-four family mortgage insurance for proposed construction under Improved Area processing; however, the Appraiser/Review Appraiser Checksheet (Form HUD-54891) must be completed.

(19) Activities of the Government National Mortgage Association under Title III of the National Housing Act (12 U.S.C. 1716 *et seq.*).

(20) Activities under the Interstate Land Sales Full Disclosure Act (15 U.S.C. 1701 *et seq.*).

(21) Refinancing of HUD-insured mortgages that will not allow new construction or rehabilitation, nor result in any physical impacts or changes except for routine maintenance; however, compliance with § 50.4(b)(1) is required.

(22) Approval of the sale of a HUD-held mortgage.

(23) Approval of the foreclosure sale of a property with a HUD-held mortgage; however, appropriate restrictions will be imposed to protect historic properties.

(24) HUD guarantees under the Loan Guarantee Recovery Fund Program (24 CFR part 573) of loans that refinance existing loans and mortgages, where any new construction or rehabilitation financed by the existing loan or mortgage has been completed prior to the filing of an application under the program, and the refinancing will not allow further construction or rehabilitation, nor result in any physical impacts or changes except for routine maintenance; however, compliance with §§ 50.4 (b)(1) and (c)(1) and 51.303(a) is required.

(c) *Approval of policy documents.* (1) Approval of rules and notices proposed for publication in the **Federal Register** or other policy documents that do not:

(i) Direct, provide for assistance or loan and mortgage insurance for, or otherwise govern or regulate, real property acquisition, disposition, leasing (other than tenant-based rental assistance), rehabilitation, alteration, demolition, or new construction; or

(ii) Establish, revise, or provide for standards for construction or construction materials, manufactured housing, or occupancy.

(2) Approval of policy documents that amend an existing document where the existing document as a whole would not fall within an exclusion in this paragraph (c) but the amendment by itself would do so;

(3) Approval of policy documents that set out fair housing or nondiscrimination standards or enforcement procedures or provide for assistance in promoting or enforcing fair housing or nondiscrimination;

(4) Approval of handbooks, notices and other documents that provide operating instructions and procedures in connection with activities under a **Federal Register** document that has previously been subject to a required environmental review.

(5) Approval of a Notice of Funding Availability (NOFA) that provides funding under, and does not alter any environmental requirements of, a regulation or program guideline that was previously published in the **Federal Register**, provided that

(i) The NOFA specifically refers to the environmental review provisions of the regulation or guideline; or

(ii) The regulation or guideline contains no environmental review provisions because it concerns only activities listed in paragraph (b) of this section.

(6) Statutorily required and/or discretionary establishment and review of interest rates, loan limits, building cost limits, prototype costs, fair market rent schedules, HUD-determined prevailing wage rates, income limits and exclusions with regard to eligibility for or calculation of HUD housing assistance or rental assistance, and similar rate and cost determinations and related external administrative or fiscal requirements or procedures which do not constitute a development decision

that affects the physical condition of specific project areas or building sites.

[61 FR 50916, Sept. 27, 1996, as amended at 62 FR 15802, Apr. 2, 1997; 63 FR 48990, Sept. 11, 1998; 68 FR 56127, Sept. 29, 2003]

§ 50.20 Categorical exclusions subject to the Federal laws and authorities cited in § 50.4.

(a) The following actions, activities and programs are categorically excluded from the NEPA requirements of this part. They are not excluded from individual compliance requirements of other environmental statutes, Executive orders and HUD standards cited in § 50.4, where appropriate. Form HUD-4128 shall be used to document compliance. Where the responsible official determines that any item identified below may have an environmental effect because of extraordinary circumstances (40 CFR 1508.4), the requirements of NEPA shall apply (see paragraph (b) of this section).

(1) Special projects directed to the removal of material and architectural barriers that restrict the mobility of and accessibility to elderly and persons with disabilities.

(2) Rehabilitation of buildings and improvements when the following conditions are met:

(i) In the case of a building for residential use (with one to four units), the density is not increased beyond four units, the land use is not changed, and the footprint of the building is not increased in a floodplain or in a wetland;

(ii) In the case of multifamily residential buildings:

(A) Unit density is not changed more than 20 percent;

(B) The project does not involve changes in land use from residential to non-residential; and

(C) The estimated cost of rehabilitation is less than 75 percent of the total estimated cost of replacement after rehabilitation.

(iii) In the case of non-residential structures, including commercial, industrial, and public buildings:

(A) The facilities and improvements are in place and will not be changed in size nor capacity by more than 20 percent; and

(B) The activity does not involve a change in land use, such as from non-residential to residential, commercial to industrial, or from one industrial use to another.

(3)(i) An individual action on up to four dwelling units where there is a maximum of four units on any one site. The units can be four one-unit buildings or one four-unit building or any combination in between; or

(ii) An individual action on a project of five or more housing units developed on scattered sites when the sites are more than 2,000 feet apart and there are not more than four housing units on any one site.

(iii) Paragraphs (a)(3)(i) and (ii) of this section do not apply to rehabilitation of a building for residential use (with one to four units) (see paragraph (a)(2)(i) of this section).

(4) Acquisition (including leasing) or disposition of, or equity loans on an existing structure, or acquisition (including leasing) of vacant land provided that the structure or land acquired, financed, or disposed of will be retained for the same use.

(5) Purchased or refinanced housing and medical facilities under section 223(f) of the National Housing Act (12 U.S.C. 1715n).

(6) Mortgage prepayments or plans of action (including incentives) under 24 CFR part 248.

(b) For categorical exclusions having the potential for significant impact because of extraordinary circumstances, HUD must prepare an EA in accordance with subpart E. If it is evident without preparing an EA that an EIS is required pursuant to § 50.42, HUD should proceed directly to the preparation of an EIS in accordance with subpart F.

[61 FR 50916, Sept. 27, 1996, as amended at 68 FR 56127, Sept. 29, 2003]

§ 50.21 Aggregation.

Activities which are geographically related and are logical parts of a composite of contemplated HUD projects shall be evaluated together.

§ 50.22 Environmental management and monitoring.

An Environmental Management and Monitoring Program shall be established prior to project approval when it is deemed necessary by the HUD approving official. The program shall be part of the approval document and must:

- (a) Be concurred in by the Field Environmental Clearance Officer (FECO) (in the absence of a FECO, by the Program Environmental Clearance Officer in Headquarters) and any cooperating agencies;
- (b) Contain specific standards, safeguards and commitments to be completed during project implementation;
- (c) Identify the staff who will be responsible for the post-approval inspection; and
- (d) Specify the time periods for conducting the evaluation and monitoring the applicant's compliance with the project agreements.

§ 50.23 Public participation.

HUD shall inform the affected public about NEPA-related hearings, public meetings, and the availability of environmental documents (see 40 CFR 1506.6(b)) in accordance with this section. Where project actions result in a FONSI, the FONSI will be available in the project file. The local HUD field office may be contacted by persons who wish to review the FONSI. In all cases, HUD shall mail notices to those who have requested them. Additional efforts for involving the public in specific notice or compliance requirements shall be made in accord with the implementing procedures of the laws and authorities cited in § 50.4. Notices pertaining to an EIS or an amendment to an EIS or a FONSI subject to § 50.34 shall be given to the public in accordance with paragraphs (a) through (d) of this section.

- (a) A NOI/EIS shall be forwarded to the AS/CPD to the attention of the Departmental Environmental Clearance Officer for publication in the **Federal Register**.
- (b) Notices will be bilingual if the affected public includes a significant portion of non-English speaking persons and will identify a date when the official public involvement element of the proposed action is to be completed and HUD internal processing is to continue.
- (c) All required notices shall be published in an appropriate local printed news medium, and sent to individuals and groups known to be interested in the proposed action.
- (d) All notices shall inform the public where additional information may be obtained.

§ 50.24 HUD review of another agency's EIS.

Where another agency's EIS is referred to the HUD Field Office in whose jurisdiction the project is located, the Field Environmental Clearance Officer shall determine whether HUD has an interest in the EIS and, if so, will review and comment. Any EIS received from another Federal agency requesting comment on legislative proposals, regulations, or other policy documents shall be sent to the AS/CPD for comment, and the AS/CPD shall provide the General Counsel the opportunity for comment.

Subpart E—Environmental Assessments and Related Reviews

§ 50.31 The EA.

- (a) Form HUD-4128—Environmental Assessment and Compliance Findings for the Related Laws—is the EA form to be used for analysis and documentation by HUD for projects and activities under subpart E. The Departmental Environmental Clearance Officer shall approve the issuance of

equivalent formats, if Form HUD-4128 does not meet specific program needs.

(b) The program representative shall obtain interdisciplinary assistance from professional experts and other HUD staff as needed. Additional information may also be requested of the sponsor/applicant. HUD is responsible for assessing and documenting the extent of the environmental impact.

§ 50.32 Responsibility for environmental processing.

The program staff in the HUD office responsible for processing the project application or recommending a policy action is responsible for conducting the compliance finding, EA, or EIS. The collection of data and studies as part of the information contained in the environmental review may be done by an applicant or the applicant's contractor. The HUD program staff may use any information supplied by the applicant or contractor, provided HUD independently evaluates the information, will be responsible for its accuracy, supplements the information, if necessary, to conform to the requirements of this part, and prepares the environmental finding. Assessments for projects over 200 lots/dwelling units or beds shall be sent to the Field Environmental Clearance Officer (FECO) or, in the absence of a FECO, to the Program Environmental Clearance Officer in Headquarters for review and comment.

§ 50.33 Action resulting from the assessment.

(a) A proposal may be accepted without modifications if the EA indicates that the proposal will not significantly (see 40 CFR 1508.27) affect the quality of the human environment and a FONSI is prepared.

(b) A proposal may be accepted with modifications provided that:

(1) Changes have been made that would reduce adverse environmental impact to acceptable and insignificant levels; and

(2) An Environmental Management and Monitoring Program is developed in accordance with § 50.22 when it is deemed necessary by the HUD approving official.

(c) A proposal should be rejected if significant and unavoidable adverse environmental impacts would still exist after modifications have been made to the proposal and an EIS is not prepared.

(d) A proposal (if not rejected) shall require an EIS if the EA indicates that significant environmental impacts would result.

§ 50.34 Time delays for exceptional circumstances.

(a) Under the circumstances described in this section, the FONSI must be made available for public review for 30 calendar days before a final decision is made whether to prepare an EIS and before the HUD action is taken. The circumstances are:

(1) When the proposed action is, or is closely similar to, one which normally requires the preparation of an EIS pursuant to § 50.42(b) but it is determined, as a result of an EA or in the course of preparation of a draft EIS, that the proposed action will not have a significant impact on the human environment; or

(2) When the nature of the proposed action is without precedent and does not appear to require more than an assessment.

(b) In such cases, the FONSI must be concurred in by the AS/CPD and the Program Environmental Clearance Officer. Notice of the availability of the FONSI shall be given to the public in accordance with paragraphs (a) through (d) of § 50.23.

§ 50.35 Use of prior environmental assessments.

When other Federal, State, or local agencies have prepared an EA or other environmental analysis for a proposed HUD project, these documents should be requested and used to the extent possible. HUD must, however, conduct the environmental analysis and prepare the EA and be responsible for the required environmental finding.

§ 50.36 Updating of environmental reviews.

The environmental review must be re-evaluated and updated when the basis for the original environmental or compliance findings is affected by a major change requiring HUD approval in the nature, magnitude or extent of a project and the project is not yet complete. A change only in the amount of financing or mortgage insurance involved does not normally require the environmental review to be re-evaluated or updated.

Subpart F—Environmental Impact Statements

§ 50.41 EIS policy.

EIS's will be prepared and considered in program determinations pursuant to the general environmental policy stated in § 50.3 and 40 CFR 1505.2 (b) and (c).

§ 50.42 Cases when an EIS is required.

(a) An EIS is required if the proposal is determined to have a significant impact on the human environment pursuant to subpart E.

(b) An EIS will normally be required if the proposal:

(1) Would provide a site or sites for hospitals or nursing homes containing a total of 2,500 or more beds; or

(2) Would remove, demolish, convert, or substantially rehabilitate 2,500 or more existing housing units (but not including rehabilitation projects categorically excluded under § 50.20), or which would result in the construction or installation of 2,500 or more housing units, or which would provide sites for 2,500 or more housing units.

(c) When the environmental concerns of one or more Federal authorities cited in § 50.4 will be affected by the proposal, the cumulative impact of all such effects should be assessed to determine whether an EIS is required. Where all of the affected authorities provide alternative procedures for resolution, those procedures should be used in lieu of an EIS.

§ 50.43 Emergencies.

In cases of national emergency and disasters or cases of imminent threat to health and safety or other emergency which require the taking of an action with significant environmental impact, the provisions of 40 CFR 1506.11 and of any applicable § 50.4 authorities which provide for emergencies shall apply.

U. S. Department of Housing and Urban Development

24 CFR PART 58

**ENVIRONMENTAL REVIEW PROCEDURES FOR
ENTITIES
ASSUMING HUD ENVIRONMENTAL RESPONSIBILITIES**

October 29, 2003

This is a compilation of the Final Rule published September 29, 2003 (effective October 29, 2003) which revised the Final Rule published April 30, 1996 (effective May 30, 1996) and the Technical Amendments published March 30, 1998 (effective April 29, 1998.) The compilation was prepared by the HUD Massachusetts State Office environmental staff. Changes are highlighted by shading.

Docname:Part 58 2003

**PART 58 - ENVIRONMENTAL
REVIEW PROCEDURES FOR
ENTITIES ASSUMING HUD
ENVIRONMENTAL
RESPONSIBILITIES**

**Subpart A--Purpose, Legal Authority, Federal Laws
and Authorities**

Sec.

- 58.1 Purpose and applicability.
- 58.2 Terms, abbreviations and definitions.
- 58.4 Assumption authority.
- 58.5 Related Federal laws and authorities.
- 58.6 Other requirements.

**Subpart B--General Policy: Responsibilities of
Responsible Entities**

- 58.10 Basic environmental responsibility.
- 58.11 Legal capacity and performance.
- 58.12 Technical and administrative capacity.
- 58.13 Responsibilities of the certifying officer.
- 58.14 Interaction with State, Federal and non-Federal entities.
- 58.15 Tiering.
- 58.17 [Removed]
- 58.18 Responsibilities of States assuming HUD environmental responsibilities.

**Subpart C--General Policy: Environmental Review
Procedures**

- 58.21 Time periods.
- 58.22 Limitations on activities pending clearance.
- 58.23 Financial assistance for environmental review.

**Subpart D--Environmental Review Process:
Documentation, Range of Activities, Project
Aggregation and Classification**

- 58.30 Environmental Review Process.
- 58.32 Project aggregation.
- 58.33 Emergencies.
- 58.34 Exempt activities.
- 58.35 Categorical exclusions.
- 58.36 Environmental assessments.
- 58.37 Environmental impact statement determinations.
- 58.38 Environmental review record.

**Subpart E--Environmental Review Process:
Environmental Assessments (EA's)**

- 58.40 Preparing the environmental assessment.
- 58.43 Dissemination and/or publication of the findings of no significant impact.
- 58.45 Public comment periods.
- 58.46 Time delays for exceptional circumstances.
- 58.47 Re-evaluation of environmental assessments and other environmental findings.

**Subpart F--Environmental Review Process:
Environmental Impact Statement Determinations**

- 58.52 Adoption of other agencies' EISs.
- 58.53 Use of prior environmental impact statements

**Subpart G--Environmental Review Process:
Procedures for Draft, Final and Supplemental
Environmental Impact Statements**

- 58.55 Notice of intent to prepare an EIS.
- 58.56 Scoping process.
- 58.57 Lead agency designation.
- 58.59 Public hearings and meetings.
- 58.60 Preparation and filing of environmental impact statements.

Subpart H--Release of Funds for Particular Projects

- 58.70 Notice of intent to request release of funds
- 58.71 Request for release of funds and certification.
- 58.72 HUD or State actions on RROFs and certifications.
- 58.73 Objections to release of funds.
- 58.74 Time for objecting.
- 58.75 Permissible bases for objections.
- 58.76 Procedure for objections.
- 58.77 Effect of approval of certification.

Authority: 12 U.S.C. 1707 note, 1715z-13a(k); 25 U.S.C. 4115 and 4226; 42 U.S.C. 1437x, 3535(d), 3547, 4332, 4852, 5304(g), 11402, 12838, and 12905(h); title II of Pub. L. 105-276; E.O. 11514 as amended by E.O. 11991, 3 CFR 1977 Comp., p. 123.

**Subpart A--Purpose, Legal Authority,
Federal Laws and Authorities**

Sec. 58.1 Purpose and applicability.

- (a) Purpose. This part provides instructions and guidance to recipients of HUD assistance and other

responsible entities for conducting an environmental review for a particular project or activity and for obtaining approval of a Request for Release of Funds.

(b) Applicability. This part applies to activities and projects where specific statutory authority exists for recipients or other responsible entities to assume environmental responsibilities. Programs and activities subject to this part include:

(1) Community Development Block Grant programs authorized by Title I of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974, in accordance with section 104(g) (42 U.S.C. 5304(g));

(2) [Reserved]

(3)(i) Grants to states and units of general local government under the Emergency Shelter Grant program, Supportive Housing Program (and its predecessors, the Supportive Housing Demonstration Program (both Transitional Housing and Permanent Housing for Homeless Persons with Disabilities) and Supplemental Assistance for Facilities to Assist the Homeless), Shelter Plus Care Program, Safe Havens for Homeless Individuals Demonstration Program, and Rural Homeless Housing Assistance, authorized by Title IV of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act, in accordance with section 443 (42 U.S.C. 11402);

(ii) Grants beginning with Fiscal Year 2001 to private non-profit organizations and housing agencies under the Supportive Housing Program and Shelter Plus Care Program authorized by Title IV of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act, in accordance with section 443 (42 U.S.C. 11402);

(4) The HOME Investment Partnerships Program authorized by Title II of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act (NAHA), in accordance with section 288 (42 U.S.C. 12838);

(5) Grants to States and units of general local government for abatement of lead-based paint and lead dust hazards pursuant to Title II of the Departments of Veterans Affairs and Housing and Urban Development and Independent Agencies Appropriations Act, 1992, and grants for lead-based paint hazard reduction under section 1011 of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, in accordance with section 1011(o) (42 U.S.C. 4852(o));

(6)(i) Public Housing Programs under Title I of the United States Housing Act of 1937, including HOPE VI grants authorized under section 24 of the Act for Fiscal Year 2000 and later, in accordance with section 26 (42 U.S.C. 1437x);

(ii) Grants for the revitalization of severely distressed public housing (HOPE VI) for Fiscal Year 1999 and prior years, in accordance with Title II of the Departments of Veterans Affairs and Housing and Urban Development, and Independent Agencies Appropriations Act, 1999 (Pub. L. 105-276, approved October 21, 1998); and

(iii) Assistance administered by a public housing agency under section 8 of the United States Housing Act of 1937, except for assistance provided under part 886 of this title, in accordance with section 26 (42 U.S.C. 1437x);

(7) Special Projects appropriated under an appropriation act for HUD, such as special projects under the heading "Annual Contributions for Assisted Housing" in Title II of various Departments of Veterans Affairs and Housing and Urban Development, and Independent Agencies Appropriations Acts, in accordance with section 305(c) of the Multifamily Housing Property Disposition Reform Act of 1994 (42 U.S.C. 3547);

(8) The FHA Multifamily Housing Finance Agency Pilot Program under section 542(c) of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, in accordance with section 542(c)(9)(12 U.S.C. 1707 note);

(9) The Self-Help Homeownership Opportunity Program under section 11 of the Housing Opportunity Program Extension Act of 1996 (Pub. L. 104-120, 110 Stat. 834), in accordance with section 11(m); American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 (NAHASDA), in accordance with:

(10) Assistance provided under the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 (NAHASDA), in accordance with:

(i) Section 105 for Indian Housing Block Grants and Federal Guarantees or Financing for Tribal Housing Authorities (25 U.S.C. 4115 and 4226); and

(ii) Section 806 for Native Hawaiian Housing Block Grants (25 U.S.C. 4226);

(11) Indian Housing Loan Guarantees authorized by section 184 of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, in accordance with section 184(k) (12 U.S.C. 1715z-13a(k)); and

(12) Grants for Housing Opportunities for Persons with AIDS (HOPWA) under the AIDS Housing Opportunity Act, as follows: competitive grants beginning with Fiscal Year 2001 and all formula grants, in accordance with section 856(h) (42 U.S.C. 12905(h)); all grants for Fiscal Year 1999 and prior years, in accordance with section 207(c) of the Departments of Veterans Affairs and Housing and Urban Development, and Independent Agencies Appropriations Act, 1999 (Pub. L. 105-276, approved October 21, 1998).

(c) When HUD assistance is used to help fund a revolving loan fund that is administered by a recipient or another party, the activities initially receiving assistance from the fund are subject to the requirements in this part. Future activities receiving assistance from the revolving loan fund, after the fund has received loan repayments, are subject to the environmental review requirements if the rules of the

HUD program that initially provided assistance to the fund continue to treat the activities as subject to the Federal requirements. If the HUD program treats the activities as not being subject to any Federal requirements, then the activities cease to become Federally-funded activities and the provisions of this part do not apply.

(d) To the extent permitted by applicable laws and the applicable regulations of the Council on Environmental Quality, the Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development may, for good cause and with appropriate conditions, approve waivers and exceptions or establish criteria for exceptions from the requirements of this part.

Sec. 58.2 Terms, abbreviations and definitions.

(a) For the purposes of this part, the following definitions supplement the uniform terminology provided in 40 CFR part 1508:

(1) *Activity* means an action that a grantee or recipient puts forth as part of an assisted project, regardless of whether its cost is to be borne by the HUD assistance or is an eligible expense under the HUD assistance program.

(2) *Certifying Officer* means the official who is authorized to execute the Request for Release of Funds and Certification and has the legal capacity to carry out the responsibilities of Sec. 58.13.

(3) *Extraordinary Circumstances* means a situation in which an environmental assessment (EA) or environmental impact statement (EIS) is not normally required, but due to unusual conditions, an EA or EIS is appropriate. Indicators of unusual conditions are:

- (i) Actions that are unique or without precedent;
- (ii) Actions that are substantially similar to those that normally require an EIS;
- (iii) Actions that are likely to alter existing HUD policy or HUD mandates; or
- (iv) Actions that, due to unusual physical conditions on the site or in the vicinity, have the potential for a significant impact on the environment or in which the environment could have a significant impact on users of the facility.

(4) *Project* means an activity, or a group of integrally related activities, designed by the recipient to accomplish, in whole or in part, a specific objective.

(5) *Recipient* means any of the following entities, when they are eligible recipients or grantees under a program listed in Sec. 58.1(b):

- (i) A State that does not distribute HUD assistance under the program to a unit of general local government;
- (ii) Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, and Palau;
- (iii) A unit of general local government;
- (iv) An Indian tribe;
- (v) With respect to Public Housing Programs under Sec. 58.1(b)(6)(i), fiscal year 1999 and prior HOPE VI

grants under Sec. 58.1(b)(6)(ii) or Section 8 assistance under Sec. 58.1(b)(6)(iii), a public housing agency;

(B) With respect to Indian Housing Programs under Sec. 58.1(b)(6)(ii), an Indian housing authority;

(C) With respect to section 8 assistance under Sec. 58.1(b)(6)(iii), a public housing agency or Indian housing authority;

(vi) Any direct grantee of HUD for a special project under Sec. 58.1(b)(7);

(vii) With respect to the FHA Multifamily Housing Finance Agency Program under 58.1(b)(8), a qualified housing finance agency;

(viii) With respect to the Self-Help Homeownership Opportunity Program under Sec. 58.1(b)(9), any direct grantee of HUD.

(ix)(A) With respect to NAHASDA assistance under Sec. 58.1(b)(10), the Indian tribe or the Department of Hawaiian Home Lands; and

(B) With respect to the Section 184 Indian Housing Loan Guarantee program under Sec. 58.1(b)(11), the Indian tribe.

(x) With respect to the Shelter Plus Care and Supportive Housing Programs under Sec. 58.1(b)(3)(ii), nonprofit organizations and other entities.

(6) Release of funds. In the case of the FHA Multifamily Housing Finance Agency Program under Sec. 58.1(b)(8), Release of Funds, as used in this part, refers to HUD issuance of a firm approval letter, and Request for Release of Funds refers to a recipient's request for a firm approval letter. In the case of the Section 184 Indian Housing Loan Guarantee program under Sec. 58.1(b)(11), Release of Funds refers to HUD's issuance of a commitment to guarantee a loan, or if there is no commitment, HUD's issuance of a certificate of guarantee.

(7) Responsible Entity. Responsible Entity means:

(i) With respect to environmental responsibilities under programs listed in Sec. 58.1(b)(1), (2), (3)(i), (4), and (5), a recipient under the program.

(ii) With respect to environmental responsibilities under the programs listed in Sec. 58.1(b)(3)(ii) and (6) through (12), a state, unit of general local government, Indian tribe or Alaska Native Village, or the Department of Hawaiian Home Lands, when it is the recipient under the program. Under the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 (25 U.S.C. 4101 et seq.) listed in Sec. 58.1(b)(10)(i), the Indian tribe is the responsible entity whether or not a Tribally Designated Housing Entity is authorized to receive grant amounts on behalf of the tribe. The Indian tribe is also the responsible entity under the Section 184 Indian Housing Loan Guarantee program listed in Sec. 58.1(b)(11). Regional Corporations in Alaska are considered Indian tribes in

this part. Non-recipient responsible entities are designated as follows:

(A) For qualified housing finance agencies, the State or a unit of general local government, Indian tribe or Alaska native village whose jurisdiction contains the project site;

(B) For public housing agencies, the unit of general local government within which the project is located that exercises land use responsibility, or if HUD determines this infeasible, the county, or if HUD determines this infeasible, the State;

(C) For non-profit organizations and other entities, the unit of general local government, Indian tribe or Alaska native village within which the project is located that exercises land use responsibility, or if HUD determines this infeasible, the county, or if HUD determines this infeasible, the State;

(8) *Unit Density* refers to a change in the number of dwelling units. Where a threshold is identified as a percentage change in density that triggers review requirements, no distinction is made between an increase or a decrease in density.

(9) *Tiering* means the evaluation of an action or an activity at various points in the development process as a proposal or event becomes ripe for an Environment Assessment or Review.

(10) *Vacant Building* means a habitable structure that has been vacant for more than one year.

(b) The following abbreviations are used throughout this part:

- (1) CDBG--Community Development Block Grant;
- (2) CEQ--Council on Environmental Quality;
- (3) EA--Environmental Assessment;
- (4) EIS--Environmental Impact Statement;
- (5) EPA--Environmental Protection Agency;
- (6) ERR--Environmental Review Record;
- (7) FONSI--Finding of No Significant Impact;
- (8) HUD--Department of Housing and Urban Development;
- (9) NAHA--Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act of 1990;
- (10) NEPA--National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, as amended;
- (11) NOI/EIS--Notice of Intent to Prepare an EIS;
- (12) NOI/RROF--Notice of Intent to Request Release of Funds;
- (13) ROD--Record of Decision;
- (14) ROF--Release of Funds; and
- (15) RROF--Request for Release of Funds.

Sec. 58.4 Assumption authority.

(a) Assumption authority for responsible entities: General.

Responsible entities shall assume the responsibility for environmental review, decision-making, and action that would otherwise apply to HUD under NEPA and

other provisions of law that further the purposes of NEPA, as specified in Sec. 58.5. Responsible entities that receive assistance directly from HUD assume these responsibilities by execution of a grant agreement with HUD and/or a legally binding document such as the certification contained on HUD Form 7015.15, certifying to the assumption of environmental responsibilities. When a State distributes funds to a responsible entity, the State must provide for appropriate procedures by which these responsible entities will evidence their assumption of environmental responsibilities.

(b) Particular responsibilities of the States. (1) States are recipients for purposes of directly undertaking a State project and must assume the environmental review responsibilities for the State's activities and those of any non-governmental entity that may participate in the project. In this case, the State must submit the certification and RROF to HUD for approval.

(2) States must exercise HUD's responsibilities in accordance with Sec. 58.18, with respect to approval of a unit of local government's environmental certification and RROF for a HUD assisted project funded through the state. Approval by the state of a unit of local government's certification and RROF satisfies the Secretary's responsibilities under NEPA and the related laws cited in Sec. 58.5.

(c) Particular responsibilities of Indian tribes. An Indian tribe may, but is not required to, assume responsibilities for environmental review, decision-making and action for programs authorized by the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 (25 U.S.C. 4101 et seq.) (other than title VIII) or section 184 of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992 (12 U.S.C. 1715z-13a).

The tribe must make a separate decision regarding assumption of responsibilities for each of these Acts and communicate that decision in writing to HUD. If the tribe assumes these responsibilities, the requirements of this part shall apply. If a tribe formally declines assumption of these responsibilities, they are retained by HUD and the provisions of part 50 of this title apply.

Sec. 58.5 Related Federal laws and authorities.

In accordance with the provisions of law cited in Sec. 58.1(b), the responsible entity must assume responsibilities for environmental review, decision-making and action that would apply to HUD under the following specified laws and authorities. The responsible entity must certify that it has complied with the requirements that would apply to HUD under these laws and authorities and must consider the criteria, standards, policies and

regulations of these laws and authorities.

(a) *Historic properties.* (1) The National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (16 U.S.C. 470 et seq.), particularly sections 106 and 110 (16 U.S.C. 470 and 470h-2).

(2) Executive Order 11593, Protection and Enhancement of the Cultural Environment, May 13, 1971 (36 FR 8921), 3 CFR 1971-1975 Comp., p. 559, particularly section 2(c).

(3) Federal historic preservation regulations as follows:

(i) 36 CFR part 800 with respect to HUD programs other than Urban Development Action Grants (UDAG); and

(ii) 36 CFR part 801 with respect to UDAG.

(4) The Reservoir Salvage Act of 1960 as amended by the Archeological and Historic Preservation Act of 1974 (16 U.S.C. 469 et seq.), particularly section 3 (16 U.S.C. 469a-1).

(b) *Floodplain management and wetland protection.* (1) Executive Order 11988, Floodplain Management, May 24, 1977 (42 FR 26951), 3 CFR, 1977 Comp., p. 117, as interpreted in HUD regulations at 24 CFR part 55, particularly section 2(a) of the order (For an explanation of the relationship between the decision-making process in 24 CFR part 55 and this part, see Sec. 55.10 of this subtitle A.)

(2) Executive Order 11990, Protection of Wetlands, May 24, 1977 (42 FR 26961), 3 CFR, 1977 Comp., p. 121, particularly sections 2 and 5.

(c) *Coastal Zone Management.* The Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 (16 U.S.C. 1451 et seq.), as amended, particularly section 307(c) and (d) (16 U.S.C. 1456(c) and (d)).

(d) *Sole source aquifers.* (1) The Safe Drinking Water Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 201, 300(f) et seq., and 21 U.S.C. 349) as amended; particularly section 1424(e)(42 U.S.C. 300h-3(e)).

(2) Sole Source Aquifers (Environmental Protection Agency--40 CFR part 149).

(e) *Endangered species.* The Endangered Species Act of 1973 (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.) as amended, particularly section 7 (16 U.S.C. 1536).

(f) *Wild and scenic rivers.* The Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968 (16 U.S.C. 1271 et seq.) as amended, particularly section 7(b) and (c) (16 U.S.C. 1278(b) and (c)).

(g) *Air quality.* (1) The Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.) as amended; particularly section 176(c) and (d) (42 U.S.C. 7506(c) and (d)).

(2) Determining Conformity of Federal Actions to State or Federal Implementation Plans (Environmental Protection Agency--40 CFR parts 6, 51, and 93).

(h) *Farmlands protection.* (1) Farmland Protection Policy Act of 1981 (7 U.S.C. 4201 et seq.) particularly sections 1540(b) and 1541 (7 U.S.C. 4201(b) and 4202).

(2) Farmland Protection Policy (Department of Agriculture--7 CFR part 658).

(i) *HUD environmental standards.* (1) Applicable criteria and standards specified in part 51 of this title, other than the runway clear zone notification requirement in Sec. 51.303(a)(3).

(2)(i) Also, it is HUD policy that all properties that are being proposed for use in HUD programs be free of hazardous materials, contamination, toxic chemicals and gases, and radioactive substances, where a hazard could affect the health and safety of occupants or conflict with the intended utilization of the property.

(ii) The environmental review of multifamily housing with five or more dwelling units (including leasing), or non-residential property, must include the evaluation of previous uses of the site or other evidence of contamination on or near the site, to ensure that the occupants of proposed sites are not adversely affected by any of the hazards listed in paragraph (i)(2)(i) of this section.

(iii) Particular attention should be given to any proposed site on or in the general proximity of such areas as dumps, landfills, industrial sites, or other locations that contain, or may have contained, hazardous wastes.

(iv) The responsible entity shall use current techniques by qualified professionals to undertake investigations determined necessary.

(j) *Environmental justice.* Executive Order 12898--Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations, February 11, 1994 (59 FR 7629), 3 CFR, 1994 Comp. p. 859.

Sec. 58.6 Other requirements.

In addition to the duties under the laws and authorities specified in Sec. 58.5 for assumption by the responsible entity under the laws cited in Sec. 58.1(b), the responsible entity must comply with the following requirements. Applicability of the following requirements does not trigger the certification and release of funds procedure under this part or preclude exemption of an activity under Sec. 58.34(a)(12) and/or the applicability of Sec. 58.35(b). However, the responsible entity remains responsible for addressing the following requirements in its ERR and meeting these requirements, where applicable, regardless of whether the activity is exempt under Sec. 58.34 or categorically excluded under Sec. 58.35(a) or (b).

(a)(1) Under the Flood Disaster Protection Act of 1973, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4001-4128), Federal financial assistance for acquisition and construction purposes (including rehabilitation) may not be used in an area identified by the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) as having special flood hazards, unless:

(i) The community in which the area is situated is

participating in the National Flood Insurance Program (see 44 CFR parts 59 through 79), or less than one year has passed since the FEMA notification regarding such hazards; and

(ii) Where the community is participating in the National Flood Insurance Program, flood insurance protection is to be obtained as a condition of the approval of financial assistance to the property owner.

(2) Where the community is participating in the National Flood Insurance Program and the recipient provides financial assistance for acquisition or construction purposes (including rehabilitation) for property located in an area identified by FEMA as having special flood hazards, the responsible entity is responsible for assuring that flood insurance under the National Flood Insurance Program is obtained and maintained.

(3) Paragraph (a) of this section does not apply to Federal formula grants made to a State.

(b) Under Section 582 of the National Flood Insurance Reform Act of 1994, 42 U.S.C. 5154a, HUD disaster assistance that is made available in a special flood hazard area may not be used to make a payment (including any loan assistance payment) to a person for repair, replacement or restoration for flood damage to any personal, residential or commercial property if:

(1) The person had previously received Federal flood disaster assistance conditioned on obtaining and maintaining flood insurance; and

(2) The person failed to obtain and maintain the flood insurance.

(c) Pursuant to the Coastal Barrier Resources Act, as amended by the Coastal Barrier Improvement Act of 1990 (16 U.S.C. 3501), HUD assistance may not be used for most activities proposed in the Coastal Barrier Resources System.

(d) In all cases involving HUD assistance, subsidy, or insurance for the purchase or sale of an existing property in a Runway Clear Zone or Clear Zone, as defined in 24 CFR part 51, the responsible entity shall advise the buyer that the property is in a runway clear zone or clear zone, what the implications of such a location are, and that there is a possibility that the property may, at a later date, be acquired by the airport operator. The buyer must sign a statement acknowledging receipt of this information.

Subpart B—General Policy: Responsibilities of Responsible Entities

Sec. 58.10 Basic environmental responsibility.

In accordance with the provisions of law cited in Sec. 58.1(b), except as otherwise provided in Sec. 58.4(c), the responsible entity must assume the environmental responsibilities for projects under

programs cited in Sec. 58.1(b). In doing so, the responsible entity must comply with the provisions of NEPA and the CEQ regulations contained in 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508, including the requirements set forth in this part.

Sec. 58.11 Legal capacity and performance.

(a) A responsible entity which believes that it does not have the legal capacity to carry out the environmental responsibilities required by this part must contact the appropriate local HUD Office or the State for further instructions. Determinations of legal capacity will be made on a case-by-case basis.

(b) If a public housing, special project, HOPWA, Supportive Housing, Shelter Plus Care, or Self-Help Homeownership Opportunity recipient that is not a responsible entity objects to the non-recipient responsible entity conducting the environmental review on the basis of performance, timing, or compatibility of objectives, HUD will review the facts to determine who will perform the environmental review.

(c) At any time, HUD may reject the use of a responsible entity to conduct the environmental review in a particular case on the basis of performance, timing or compatibility of objectives, or in accordance with Sec. 58.77(d)(1).

(d) If a responsible entity, other than a recipient, objects to performing an environmental review, or if HUD determines that the responsible entity should not perform the environmental review, HUD may designate another responsible entity to conduct the review in accordance with this part or may itself conduct the environmental review in accordance with the provisions of 24 CFR part 50.

Sec. 58.12 Technical and administrative capacity

The responsible entity must develop the technical and administrative capability necessary to comply with 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508 and the requirements of this part.

Sec. 58.13 Responsibilities of the certifying officer

Under the terms of the certification required by Sec. 58.71, a responsible entity's certifying officer is the "responsible Federal official" as that term is used in section 102 of NEPA and in statutory provisions cited in Sec. 58.1(b). The Certifying Officer is therefore responsible for all the requirements of section 102 of NEPA and the related provisions in 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508, and 24 CFR part 58, including the related Federal authorities listed in Sec. 58.5. The Certifying Officer must also:

(a) Represent the responsible entity and be subject to the jurisdiction of the Federal courts. The Certifying Officer will not be represented by the Department of Justice in court; and

(b) Ensure that the responsible entity reviews and comments on all EISs prepared for Federal projects that may have an impact on the recipient's program.

Sec. 58.14 Interaction with State, Federal and non-Federal entities

A responsible entity shall consult with appropriate environmental agencies, State, Federal and non-Federal entities and the public in the preparation of an EIS, EA or other environmental reviews undertaken under the related laws and authorities cited in Sec. 58.5 and Sec. 58.6. The responsible entity must also cooperate with other agencies to reduce duplication between NEPA and comparable environmental review requirements of the State (see 40 CFR 1506.2(b) and (c)). The responsible entity must prepare its EAs and EISs so that they comply with the environmental review requirements of both Federal and State laws unless otherwise specified or provided by law. State, Federal and local agencies may participate or act in a joint lead or cooperating agency capacity in the preparation of joint EISs (see 40 CFR 1501.5(b) and 1501.6). A single EIS or EA may be prepared and adopted by multiple users to the extent that the review addresses the relevant environmental issues and there is a written agreement between the cooperating agencies which sets forth the coordinated and overall responsibilities.

Sec. 58.15 Tiering.

Responsible entities may tier their environmental reviews and assessments to eliminate repetitive discussions of the same issues at subsequent levels of review. Tiering is appropriate when there is a requirement to evaluate a policy or proposal in the early stages of development or when site-specific analysis or mitigation is not currently feasible and a more narrow or focused analysis is better done at a later date. The site specific review need only reference or summarize the issues addressed in the broader review. The broader review should identify and evaluate those issues ripe for decision and exclude those issues not relevant to the policy, program or project under consideration. The broader review should also establish the policy, standard or process to be followed in the site specific review. The Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI) with respect to the broader assessment shall include a summary of the assessment and identify the significant issues to be considered in site specific reviews. Subsequent site-specific reviews will not require notices or a Request for Release of Funds unless the Certifying Officer determines that there are unanticipated impacts or impacts not adequately addressed in the prior review. A tiering approach can be used for meeting environmental review requirements in areas designated for special focus in local Consolidated Plans. Local and State Governments are encouraged

to use the Consolidated Plan process to facilitate environmental reviews.

Sec. 58.17 [Removed]

Sec. 58.18 Responsibilities of States assuming HUD environmental responsibilities.

States that elect to administer a HUD program shall ensure that the program complies with the provisions of this part. The state must:

(a) Designate the state agency or agencies that will be responsible for carrying out the requirements and administrative responsibilities set forth in subpart H of this part and which will:

(1) Develop a monitoring and enforcement program for post-review actions on environmental reviews and monitor compliance with any environmental conditions included in the award.

(2) Receive public notices, RROFs, and certifications from recipients pursuant to Sec. Sec. 58.70 and 58.71; accept objections from the public and from other agencies (Sec. 58.73); and perform other related responsibilities regarding releases of funds.

(b) Fulfill the state role in subpart H relative to the time period set for the receipt and disposition of comments, objections and appeals (if any) on particular projects.

Subpart C—General Policy: Environmental Review Procedures

Sec. 58.21 Time periods.

All time periods in this part shall be counted in calendar days. The first day of a time period begins at 12:01 a.m. local time on the day following the publication or the mailing and posting date of the notice which initiates the time period.

Sec. 58.22 Limitations on activities pending clearance.

(a) Neither a recipient nor any participant in the development process, including public or private nonprofit or for-profit entities, or any of their contractors, may commit HUD assistance under a program listed in Sec. 58.1(b) on an activity or project until HUD or the state has approved the recipient's RROF and the related certification from the responsible entity. In addition, until the RROF and the related certification have been approved, neither a recipient nor any participant in the development process may commit non-HUD funds on or undertake an activity or project under a program listed in Sec. 58.1(b) if the activity or project would have an adverse environmental impact or limit the choice of reasonable alternatives.

(b) If a project or activity is exempt under Sec. 58.34, or is categorically excluded (except in extraordinary circumstances) under Sec. 58.35(b), no RROF is required and the recipient may undertake the activity immediately after the responsible entity has documented its determination as required in Sec. 58.34(b) and Sec. 58.35(d), but the recipient must comply with applicable requirements under Sec. 58.6.

(c) If a recipient is considering an application from a prospective subrecipient or beneficiary and is aware that the prospective subrecipient or beneficiary is about to take an action within the jurisdiction of the recipient that is prohibited by paragraph (a) of this section, then the recipient will take appropriate action to ensure that the objectives and procedures of NEPA are achieved.

(d) An option agreement on a proposed site or property is allowable prior to the completion of the environmental review if the option agreement is subject to a determination by the recipient on the desirability of the property for the project as a result of the completion of the environmental review in accordance with this part and the cost of the option is a nominal portion of the purchase price. There is no constraint on the purchase of an option by third parties that have not been selected for HUD funding, have no responsibility for the environmental review and have no say in the approval or disapproval of the project.

(e) Self-Help Homeownership Opportunity Program (SHOP). In accordance with section 11(d)(2)(A) of the Housing Opportunity Program Extension Act of 1996 (42 U.S.C. 12805 note), an organization, consortium, or affiliate receiving assistance under the SHOP program may advance nongrant funds to acquire land prior to completion of an environmental review and approval of a Request for Release of Funds (RROF) and certification, notwithstanding paragraph (a) of this section. Any advances to acquire land prior to approval of the RROF and certification are made at the risk of the organization, consortium, or affiliate and reimbursement for such advances may depend on the result of the environmental review. This authorization is limited to the SHOP program only and all other forms of HUD assistance are subject to the limitations in paragraph (a) of this section.

(f) Relocation. Funds may be committed for relocation assistance before the approval of the RROF and related certification for the project provided that the relocation assistance is required by 24 CFR part 42.

Sec. 58.23 Financial assistance for environmental review.

The costs of environmental reviews, including costs incurred in complying with any of the related laws and authorities cited in Sec. 58.5 and Sec. 58.6, are eligible costs to the extent allowable under the HUD assistance program regulations.

Subpart D—Environmental Review Process: Documentation, Range of Activities, Project Aggregation and Classification

Sec. 58.30 Environmental Review Process.

(a) The environmental review process consists of all the actions that a responsible entity must take to determine compliance with this part. The environmental review process includes all the compliance actions needed for other activities and projects that are not assisted by HUD but are aggregated by the responsible entity in accordance with Sec. 58.32.

(b) The environmental review process should begin as soon as a recipient determines the projected use of HUD assistance.

Sec. 58.32 Project aggregation

(a) A responsible entity must group together and evaluate as a single project all individual activities which are related either on a geographical or functional basis, or are logical parts of a composite of contemplated actions.

(b) In deciding the most appropriate basis for aggregation when evaluating activities under more than one program, the responsible entity may choose: functional aggregation when a specific type of activity (e.g., water improvements) is to take place in several separate locales or jurisdictions; geographic aggregation when a mix of dissimilar but related activities is to be concentrated in a fairly specific project area (e.g., a combination of water, sewer and street improvements and economic development activities); or a combination of aggregation approaches, which, for various project locations, considers the impacts arising from each functional activity and its interrelationship with other activities.

(c) The purpose of project aggregation is to group together related activities so that the responsible entity can:

(1) Address adequately and analyze, in a single environmental review, the separate and combined impacts of activities that are similar, connected and closely related, or that are dependent upon other activities and actions. (See 40 CFR 1508.25(a)).

(2) Consider reasonable alternative courses of action.

(3) Schedule the activities to resolve conflicts or mitigate the individual, combined and/or cumulative effects.

(4) Prescribe mitigation measures and safeguards including project alternatives and modifications to individual activities.

(d) Multi-year project aggregation. (1) Release of funds. When a recipient's planning and program development provide for activities to be implemented over two or more years, the responsible entity's environmental review should consider the relationship among all component activities of the multi-year project regardless of the source of funds and address and evaluate their cumulative environmental effects. The estimated range of the aggregated activities and the estimated cost of the total project must be listed and described by the responsible entity in the environmental review and included in the RROF. The release of funds will cover the entire project period.

(2) When one or more of the conditions described in Sec. 58.47 exists, the recipient or other responsible entity must re-evaluate the environmental review.

Sec. 58.33 Emergencies

(a) In the cases of emergency, disaster or imminent threat to health and safety which warrant the taking of an action with significant environmental impact, the provisions of 40 CFR 1506.11 shall apply.

(b) If funds are needed on an emergency basis and adherence to separate comment periods would prevent the giving of assistance during a Presidentially declared disaster, or during a local emergency that has been declared by the chief elected official of the responsible entity who has proclaimed that there is an immediate need for public action to protect the public safety, the combined Notice of FONSI and Notice of Intent to Request Release of Funds (NOI/RROF) may be disseminated and/or published simultaneously with the submission of the RROF. The combined Notice of FONSI and NOI/RROF shall state that the funds are needed on an emergency basis due to a declared disaster and that the comment periods have been combined. The Notice shall also invite commenters to submit their comments to both HUD and the responsible entity issuing the notice to ensure that these comments will receive full consideration.

Sec. 58.34 Exempt activities.

(a) Except for the applicable requirements of Sec. 58.6, the responsible entity does not have to comply with the requirements of this part or undertake any environmental review, consultation or other action under NEPA and the other provisions of law or authorities cited in Sec. 58.5 for the activities exempt by this section or projects consisting solely of the following exempt activities:

(1) Environmental and other studies, resource

identification and the development of plans and strategies;

(2) Information and financial services;

(3) Administrative and management activities;

(4) Public services that will not have a physical impact or result in any physical changes, including but not limited to services concerned with employment, crime prevention, child care, health, drug abuse, education, counseling, energy conservation and welfare or recreational needs;

(5) Inspections and testing of properties for hazards or defects;

(6) Purchase of insurance;

(7) Purchase of tools;

(8) Engineering or design costs;

(9) Technical assistance and training;

(10) Assistance for temporary or permanent improvements that do not alter environmental conditions and are limited to protection, repair or restoration activities necessary only to control or arrest the effects from disasters or imminent threats to public safety including those resulting from physical deterioration;

(11) Payment of principal and interest on loans made or obligations guaranteed by HUD;

(12) Any of the categorical exclusions listed in Sec. 58.35(a) provided that there are no circumstances which require compliance with any other Federal laws and authorities cited in Sec. 58.5.

(b) A recipient does not have to submit an RROF and certification, and no further approval from HUD or the State will be needed by the recipient for the drawdown of funds to carry out exempt activities and projects. However, the responsible entity must document in writing its determination that each activity or project is exempt and meets the conditions specified for such exemption under this section.

Sec. 58.35 Categorical exclusions.

Categorical exclusion refers to a category of activities for which no environmental impact statement or environmental assessment and finding of no significant impact under NEPA is required, except in extraordinary circumstances (see Sec. 58.2(a)(3)) in which a normally excluded activity may have a significant impact. Compliance with the other applicable Federal environmental laws and authorities listed in Sec. 58.5 is required for any categorical exclusion listed in paragraph (a) of this section.

(a) Categorical exclusions subject to Sec. 58.5. The following activities are categorically excluded under NEPA, but may be subject to review under authorities listed in Sec. 58.5:

(1) Acquisition, repair, improvement, reconstruction, or rehabilitation of public facilities and improvements (other than buildings) when the facilities and improvements are in place and will be retained in the same use without change in size or

capacity of more than 20 percent (e.g., replacement of water or sewer lines, reconstruction of curbs and sidewalks, repaving of streets).

(2) Special projects directed to the removal of material and architectural barriers that restrict the mobility of and accessibility to elderly and handicapped persons.

(3) Rehabilitation of buildings and improvements when the following conditions are met:

(i) In the case of a building for residential use (with one to four units), the density is not increased beyond four units, the land use is not changed, and the footprint of the building is not increased in a floodplain or in a wetland;

(ii) In the case of multifamily residential buildings:
(A) Unit density is not changed more than 20 percent;

(B) The project does not involve changes in land use from residential to non-residential; and

(C) The estimated cost of rehabilitation is less than 75 percent of the total estimated cost of replacement after rehabilitation.

(iii) In the case of non-residential structures, including commercial, industrial, and public buildings:

(A) The facilities and improvements are in place and will not be changed in size or capacity by more than 20 percent; and

(B) The activity does not involve a change in land use, such as from non-residential to residential, commercial to industrial, or from one industrial use to another.

(4)(i) An individual action on up to four dwelling units where there is a maximum of four units on any one site. The units can be four one-unit buildings or one four-unit building or any combination in between; or

(ii) An individual action on a project of five or more housing units developed on scattered sites when the sites are more than 2,000 feet apart and there are not more than four housing units on any one site.

(iii) Paragraphs (a)(4)(i) and (ii) of this section do not apply to rehabilitation of a building for residential use (with one to four units) (see paragraph (a)(3)(i) of this section).

(5) Acquisition (including leasing) or disposition of, or equity loans on an existing structure, or acquisition (including leasing) of vacant land provided that the structure or land acquired, financed, or disposed of will be retained for the same use.

(6) Combinations of the above activities.

(b) Categorical exclusions not subject to Sec. 58.5. The Department has determined that the following categorically excluded activities would not alter any conditions that would require a review or compliance determination under the Federal laws and authorities cited in Sec. 58.5. When the following kinds of activities are undertaken, the responsible entity does

not have to publish a NOI/RROF or execute a certification and the recipient does not have to submit a RROF to HUD (or the State) except in the circumstances described in paragraph (c) of this section. Following the award of the assistance, no further approval from HUD or the State will be needed with respect to environmental requirements, except where paragraph (c) of this section applies. The recipient remains responsible for carrying out any applicable requirements under Sec. 58.6.

(1) Tenant-based rental assistance;

(2) Supportive services including, but not limited to, health care, housing services, permanent housing placement, day care, nutritional services, short-term payments for rent/mortgage/utility costs, and assistance in gaining access to local, State, and Federal government benefits and services;

(3) Operating costs including maintenance, security, operation, utilities, furnishings, equipment, supplies, staff training and recruitment and other incidental costs;

(4) Economic development activities, including but not limited to, equipment purchase, inventory financing, interest subsidy, operating expenses and similar costs not associated with construction or expansion of existing operations;

(5) Activities to assist homebuyers to purchase existing dwelling units or dwelling units under construction, including closing costs and down payment assistance, interest buydowns, and similar activities that result in the transfer of title.

(6) Affordable housing pre-development costs including legal, consulting, developer and other costs related to obtaining site options, project financing, administrative costs and fees for loan commitments, zoning approvals, and other related activities which do not have a physical impact.

(7) Approval of supplemental assistance (including insurance or guarantee) to a project previously approved under this part, if the approval is made by the same responsible entity that conducted the environmental review on the original project and re-evaluation of the environmental findings is not required under Sec. 58.47.

(c) Circumstances requiring NEPA review. If a responsible entity determines that an activity or project identified in paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, because of extraordinary circumstances and conditions at or affecting the location of the activity or project, may have a significant environmental effect, it shall comply with all the requirements of this part.

(d) The Environmental Review Record (ERR) must contain a well organized written record of the process and determinations made under this section.

Sec. 58.36 Environmental assessments.

If a project is not exempt or categorically excluded

under Secs. 58.34 and 58.35, the responsible entity must prepare an EA in accordance with subpart E of this part. If it is evident without preparing an EA that an EIS is required under Sec. 58.37, the responsible entity should proceed directly to an EIS.

Sec. 58.37 Environmental impact statement determinations.

(a) An EIS is required when the project is determined to have a potentially significant impact on the human environment.

(b) An EIS is required under any of the following circumstances, except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section:

(1) The project would provide a site or sites for, or result in the construction of, hospitals or nursing homes containing a total of 2,500 or more beds.

(2) The project would remove, demolish, convert or substantially rehabilitate 2,500 or more existing housing units (but not including rehabilitation projects categorically excluded under Sec. 58.35), or would result in the construction or installation of 2,500 or more housing units, or would provide sites for 2,500 or more housing units.

(3) The project would provide enough additional water and sewer capacity to support 2,500 or more additional housing units. The project does not have to be specifically intended for residential use nor does it have to be totally new construction. If the project is designed to provide upgraded service to existing development as well as to serve new development, only that portion of the increased capacity which is intended to serve new development should be counted.

(c) If, on the basis of an EA, a responsible entity determines that the thresholds in paragraph (b) of this section are the sole reason for the EIS, the responsible entity may prepare a FONSI pursuant to 40 CFR 1501.4. In such cases, the FONSI must be made available for public review for at least 30 days before the responsible entity makes the final determination whether to prepare an EIS.

(d) Notwithstanding paragraphs (a) through (c) of this section, an EIS is not required where Sec. 58.53 is applicable.

(e) Recommended EIS Format. The responsible entity must use the EIS format recommended by the CEQ regulations (40 CFR 1502.10) unless a determination is made on a particular project that there is a compelling reason to do otherwise. In such a case, the EIS format must meet the minimum requirements prescribed in 40 CFR 1502.10.

Sec. 58.38 Environmental review record.

The responsible entity must maintain a written record of the environmental review undertaken under this part for each project. This document will be designated the "Environmental Review Record" (ERR), and shall be available for public review. The responsible entity must use the current

HUD-recommended formats or develop equivalent formats.

(a) ERR Documents. The ERR shall contain all the environmental review documents, public notices and written determinations or environmental findings required by this part as evidence of review, decisionmaking and actions pertaining to a particular project of a recipient. The document shall:

(1) Describe the project and the activities that the recipient has determined to be part of the project;

(2) Evaluate the effects of the project or the activities on the human environment;

(3) Document compliance with applicable statutes and authorities, in particular those cited in Sec. 58.5 and 58.6; and

(4) Record the written determinations and other review findings required by this part (e.g., exempt and categorically excluded projects determinations, findings of no significant impact).

(b) Other documents and information. The ERR shall also contain verifiable source documents and relevant base data used or cited in EAs, EISs or other project review documents. These documents may be incorporated by reference into the ERR provided that each source document is identified and available for inspection by interested parties. Proprietary material and special studies prepared for the recipient that are not otherwise generally available for public review shall not be incorporated by reference but shall be included in the ERR.

Subpart E—Environmental Review Process: Environmental Assessments (EA's)

Sec. 58.40 Preparing the environmental assessment

The responsible entity may prepare the EA using the HUD recommended format. In preparing an EA for a particular project, the responsible entity must:

(a) Determine existing conditions and describe the character, features and resources of the project area and its surroundings; identify the trends that are likely to continue in the absence of the project.

(b) Identify all potential environmental impacts, whether beneficial or adverse, and the conditions that would change as a result of the project.

(c) Identify, analyze and evaluate all impacts to determine the significance of their effects on the human environment and whether the project will require further compliance under related laws and authorities cited in Sec. 58.5 and Sec. 58.6.

(d) Examine and recommend feasible ways in which the project or external factors relating to the project could be modified in order to eliminate or minimize adverse environmental impacts.

(e) Examine alternatives to the project itself, if appropriate, including the alternative of no action.

(f) Complete all environmental review requirements necessary for the project's compliance with applicable authorities cited in Secs. 58.5 and 58.6.

(g) Based on steps set forth in paragraph (a) through (f) of this section, make one of the following findings:

(1) A Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI), in which the responsible entity determines that the project is not an action that will result in a significant impact on the quality of the human environment. The responsible entity may then proceed to Sec. 58.43.

(2) A finding of significant impact, in which the project is deemed to be an action which may significantly affect the quality of the human environment. The responsible entity must then proceed with its environmental review under subpart F or G of this part.

Sec. 58.43 Dissemination and/or publication of the findings of no significant impact.

(a) If the responsible entity makes a finding of no significant impact, it must prepare a FONSI notice, using the current HUD-recommended format or an equivalent format. As a minimum, the responsible entity must send the FONSI notice to individuals and groups known to be interested in the activities, to the local news media, to the appropriate tribal, local, State and Federal agencies; to the Regional Offices of the Environmental Protection Agency having jurisdiction and to the HUD Field Office (or the State where applicable). The responsible entity may also publish the FONSI notice in a newspaper of general circulation in the affected community. If the notice is not published, it must also be prominently displayed in public buildings, such as the local Post Office and within the project area or in accordance with procedures established as part of the citizen participation process.

(b) The responsible entity may disseminate or publish a FONSI notice at the same time it disseminates or publishes the NOI/RROF required by Sec. 58.70. If the notices are released as a combined notice, the combined notice shall:

(1) Clearly indicate that it is intended to meet two separate procedural requirements; and

(2) Advise the public to specify in their comments which "notice" their comments address.

(c) The responsible entity must consider the comments and make modifications, if appropriate, in response to the comments, before it completes its environmental certification and before the recipient submits its RROF. If funds will be used in Presidentially declared disaster areas, modifications resulting from public comment, if appropriate, must be made before proceeding with the expenditure of funds.

Sec. 58.45 Public comment periods

Required notices must afford the public the following minimum comment periods, counted in accordance with Sec. 58.21:

(a) Notice of Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI) 15 days when published or, if no publication, 18 days when mailing and posting
(b) Notice of Intent to Request Release of Funds (NOI-RROF) 7 days when published or, if no publication, 10 days when mailing and posting
(c) Concurrent or combined notices 15 days when published or, if no publication, 18 days when mailing and posting

Sec. 58.46 Time delays for exceptional circumstances.

The responsible entity must make the FONSI available for public comments for 30 days before the recipient files the RROF when: (a) There is a considerable interest or controversy concerning the project;

(b) The proposed project is similar to other projects that normally require the preparation of an EIS; or

(c) The project is unique and without precedent.

Sec. 58.47 Re-evaluation of environmental assessments and other environmental findings.

(a) A responsible entity must re-evaluate its environmental findings to determine if the original findings are still valid, when:

(1) The recipient proposes substantial changes in the nature, magnitude or extent of the project, including adding new activities not anticipated in the original scope of the project;

(2) There are new circumstances and environmental conditions which may affect the project or have a bearing on its impact, such as concealed or unexpected conditions discovered during the implementation of the project or activity which is proposed to be continued; or

(3) The recipient proposes the selection of an alternative not in the original finding.

(b)(1) If the original findings are still valid but the data or conditions upon which they were based have changed, the responsible entity must affirm the original findings and update its ERR by including this re-evaluation and its determination based on its findings. Under these circumstances, if a FONSI notice has already been published, no further publication of a FONSI notice is required.

(2) If the responsible entity determines that the original findings are no longer valid, it must prepare an EA or an EIS if its evaluation indicates potentially significant impacts.

(3) Where the recipient is not the responsible entity, the recipient must inform the responsible entity promptly of any proposed substantial changes under paragraph (a)(1) of this section, new circumstances or environmental conditions under paragraphs (a)(2) of this section, or any proposals to select a different alternative under paragraph (a)(3) of this section, and

must them permit the responsible entity to re-evaluate the findings before proceeding.

Subpart F—Environmental Review Process: Environmental Impact Statement Determinations

Sec. 58.52 Adoption of other agencies' EISs.

The responsible entity may adopt a draft or final EIS prepared by another agency provided that the EIS was prepared in accordance with 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508. If the responsible entity adopts an EIS prepared by another agency, the procedure in 40 CFR 1506.3 shall be followed. An adopted EIS may have to be revised and modified to adapt it to the particular environmental conditions and circumstances of the project if these are different from the project reviewed in the EIS. In such cases the responsible entity must prepare, circulate, and file a supplemental draft EIS in the manner prescribed in Sec. 58.60(d) and otherwise comply with the clearance and time requirements of the EIS process, except that scoping requirements under 40 CFR 1501.7 shall not apply. The agency that prepared the original EIS should be informed that the responsible entity intends to amend and adopt the EIS. The responsible entity may adopt an EIS when it acts as a cooperating agency in its preparation under 40 CFR 1506.3. The responsible entity is not required to re-circulate or file the EIS, but must complete the clearance process for the RROF. The decision to adopt an EIS shall be made a part of the project ERR.

Sec. 58.53 Use of prior environmental impact statements.

Where any final EIS has been listed in the Federal Register for a project pursuant to this part, or where an areawide or similar broad scale final EIS has been issued and the EIS anticipated a subsequent project requiring an environmental clearance, then no new EIS is required for the subsequent project if all the following conditions are met:

(a) The ERR contains a decision based on a finding pursuant to Sec. 58.40 that the proposed project is not a new major Federal action significantly affecting the quality of the human environment. The decision shall include:

(1) References to the prior EIS and its evaluation of the environmental factors affecting the proposed subsequent action subject to NEPA;

(2) An evaluation of any environmental factors which may not have been previously assessed, or which may have significantly changed;

(3) An analysis showing that the proposed project is consistent with the location, use, and density assumptions for the site and with the timing and capacity of the circulation, utility, and other supporting infrastructure assumptions in the prior EIS;

(4) Documentation showing that where the previous EIS called for mitigating measures or other corrective action, these are completed to the extent reasonable given the current state of development.

(b) The prior final EIS has been filed within five (5) years, and updated as follows:

(1) The EIS has been updated to reflect any significant revisions made to the assumptions under which the original EIS was prepared;

(2) The EIS has been updated to reflect new environmental issues and data or legislation and implementing regulations which may have significant environmental impact on the project area covered by the prior EIS.

(c) There is no litigation pending in connection with the prior EIS, and no final judicial finding of inadequacy of the prior EIS has been made.

Subpart G—Environmental Review Process: Procedures for Draft, Final and Supplemental Environmental Impact Statements

Sec. 58.55 Notice of intent to prepare an EIS.

As soon as practicable after the responsible entity decides to prepare an EIS, it must publish a NOI/EIS, using the HUD recommended format and disseminate it in the same manner as required by 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508.

Sec. 58.56 Scoping process.

The determination on whether or not to hold a scoping meeting will depend on the same circumstances and factors as for the holding of public hearings under Sec. 58.59. The responsible entity must wait at least 15 days after disseminating or publishing the NOI/EIS before holding a scoping meeting.

Sec. 58.57 Lead agency designation.

If there are several agencies ready to assume the lead role, the responsible entity must make its decision based on the criteria in 40 CFR 1501.5(c). If the responsible entity and a Federal agency are unable to reach agreement, then the responsible entity must notify HUD (or the State, where applicable). HUD (or the State) will assist in obtaining a determination based on the procedure set forth in 40 CFR 1501.5(e).

Sec. 58.59 Public hearings and meetings.

(a) Factors to consider. In determining whether or not to hold public hearings in accordance with 40 CFR 1506.6, the responsible entity must consider the following factors:

(1) The magnitude of the project in terms of economic costs, the geographic area involved, and the uniqueness or size of commitment of resources involved.

(2) The degree of interest in or controversy

concerning the project.

(3) The complexity of the issues and the likelihood that information will be presented at the hearing which will be of assistance to the responsible entity.

(4) The extent to which public involvement has been achieved through other means.

(b) Procedure. All public hearings must be preceded by a notice of public hearing, which must be published in the local news media 15 days before the hearing date. The Notice must:

(1) State the date, time, place, and purpose of the hearing or meeting.

(2) Describe the project, its estimated costs, and the project area.

(3) State that persons desiring to be heard on environmental issues will be afforded the opportunity to be heard.

(4) State the responsible entity's name and address and the name and address of its Certifying Officer.

(5) State what documents are available, where they can be obtained, and any charges that may apply.

Sec. 58.60 Preparation and filing of environmental impact statements.

(a) The responsible entity must prepare the draft environmental impact statement (DEIS) and the final environmental impact statements (FEIS) using the current HUD recommended format or its equivalent.

(b) The responsible entity must file and distribute the (DEIS) and the (FEIS) in the following manner:

(1) Five copies to EPA Headquarters;

(2) Five copies to EPA Regional Office;

(3) Copies made available in the responsible entity's and the recipient's office;

(4) Copies or summaries made available to persons who request them; and

(5) FEIS only--one copy to State, HUD Field Office, and HUD Headquarters library.

(c) The responsible entity may request waivers from the time requirements specified for the draft and final EIS as prescribed in 40 CFR 1506.6.

(d) When substantial changes are proposed in a project or when significant new circumstances or information becomes available during an environmental review, the recipient may prepare a supplemental EIS as prescribed in 40 CFR 1502.9.

(e) The responsible entity must prepare a Record of Decision (ROD) as prescribed in 40 CFR 1505.2.

Subpart H--Release of Funds for Particular Projects

Sec. 58.70 Notice of intent to request release of funds.

The NOI/RROF must be disseminated and/or published in the manner prescribed by Sec. 58.43 and Sec. 58.45 before the certification is signed by the responsible entity.

Sec. 58.71 Request for release of funds and certification

(a) The RROF and certification shall be sent to the appropriate HUD Field Office (or the State, if applicable), except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. This request shall be executed by the Certifying Officer. The request shall describe the specific project and activities covered by the request and contain the certification required under the applicable statute cited in Sec. 58.1(b). The RROF and certification must be in a form specified by HUD.

(b) When the responsible entity is conducting an environmental review on behalf of a recipient, as provided for in Sec. 58.10, the recipient must provide the responsible entity with all available project and environmental information and refrain from undertaking any physical activities or choice limiting actions until HUD (or the State, if applicable) has approved its request for release of funds. The certification form executed by the responsible entity's certifying officer shall be sent to the recipient that is to receive the assistance along with a description of any special environmental conditions that must be adhered to in carrying out the project. The recipient is to submit the RROF and the certification of the responsible entity to HUD (or the State, if applicable) requesting the release of funds. The recipient must agree to abide by the special conditions, procedures and requirements of the environmental review, and to advise the responsible entity of any proposed change in the scope of the project or any change in environmental conditions.

(c) If the responsible entity determines that some of the activities are exempt under applicable provisions of this part, the responsible entity shall advise the recipient that it may commit funds for these activities as soon as programmatic authorization is received. This finding shall be documented in the ERR maintained by the responsible entity and in the recipient's project files.

Sec. 58.72 HUD or State Actions on RROFs and certifications.

The actions which HUD (or a State) may take with respect to a recipient's environmental certification and RROF are as follows:

(a) In the absence of any receipt of objection to the contrary, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, HUD (or the State) will assume the validity of the certification and RROF and will approve these documents after expiration of the 15-day period prescribed by statute.

(b) HUD (or the state) may disapprove a certification and RROF if it has knowledge that the responsible entity or other participants in the development process have not complied with the items in Sec. 58.75, or that the RROF and certification are inaccurate.

(c) In cases in which HUD has approved a certification and RROF but subsequently learns (e.g., through monitoring) that the recipient violated Sec. 58.22 or the recipient or responsible entity otherwise failed to comply with a clearly applicable environmental authority, HUD shall impose appropriate remedies and sanctions in accord with the law and regulations for the program under which the violation was found.

Sec. 58.73 Objections to release of funds

HUD (or the State) will not approve the RROF for any project before 15 calendar days have elapsed from the time of receipt of the RROF and the certification or from the time specified in the notice published pursuant to Sec. 58.70, whichever is later. Any person or agency may object to a recipient's RROF and the related certification. However, the objections must meet the conditions and procedures set forth in subpart H of this part. HUD (or the State) can refuse the RROF and certification on any grounds set forth in Sec. 58.75. All decisions by HUD (or the State) regarding the RROF and the certification shall be final.

Sec. 58.74 Time for objecting

All objections must be received by HUD (or the State) within 15 days from the time HUD (or the State) receives the recipient's RROF and the related certification, or within the time period specified in the notice, whichever is later.

Sec. 58.75 Permissible bases for objections

HUD (or the State), will consider objections claiming a responsible entity's noncompliance with this part based only on any of the following grounds:

(a) The certification was not in fact executed by the responsible entity's Certifying Officer.

(b) The responsible entity has failed to make one of the two findings pursuant to Sec. 58.40 or to make the written determination required by Secs. 58.35, 58.47 or 58.53 for the project, as applicable.

(c) The responsible entity has omitted one or more of the steps set forth in subpart E of this part for the preparation, publication and completion of an EA.

(d) The responsible entity has omitted one or more of the steps set forth at subparts F and G of this part for the conduct, preparation, publication and completion of an EIS.

(e) The recipient or other participants in the development process have committed funds, incurred costs or undertaken activities not authorized by this part before release of funds and approval of the environmental certification by HUD (or the state).

(f) Another Federal agency acting pursuant to 40 CFR part 1504 has submitted a written finding that the project is unsatisfactory from the standpoint of environmental quality.

Sec. 58.76 Procedure for objections

A person or agency objecting to a responsible entity's RROF and certification shall submit

objections in writing to HUD (or the State). The objections shall:

(a) Include the name, address and telephone number of the person or agency submitting the objection, and be signed by the person or authorized official of an agency.

(b) Be dated when signed.

(c) Describe the basis for objection and the facts or legal authority supporting the objection.

(d) State when a copy of the objection was mailed or delivered to the responsible entity's Certifying Officer.

Sec. 58.77 Effect of approval of certification

(a) Responsibilities of HUD and States. HUD's (or, where applicable, the State's) approval of the certification shall be deemed to satisfy the responsibilities of the Secretary under NEPA and related provisions of law cited at Sec. 58.5 insofar as those responsibilities relate to the release of funds as authorized by the applicable provisions of law cited in Sec. 58.1(b).

(b) Public and agency redress. Persons and agencies seeking redress in relation to environmental reviews covered by an approved certification shall deal with the responsible entity and not with HUD. It is HUD's policy to refer all inquiries and complaints to the responsible entity and its Certifying Officer.

Similarly, the State (where applicable) may direct persons and agencies seeking redress in relation to environmental reviews covered by an approved certification to deal with the responsible entity, and not the State, and may refer inquiries and complaints to the responsible entity and its Certifying Officer. Remedies for noncompliance are set forth in program regulations.

(c) Implementation of environmental review decisions. Projects of a recipient will require post-review monitoring and other inspection and enforcement actions by the recipient and the State or HUD (using procedures provided for in program regulations) to assure that decisions adopted through the environmental review process are carried out during project development and implementation.

(d) Responsibility for monitoring and training. (1) At least once every three years, HUD intends to conduct in-depth monitoring and exercise quality control (through training and consultation) over the environmental activities performed by responsible entities under this part. Limited monitoring of these environmental activities will be conducted during each program monitoring site visit. If through limited or in-depth monitoring of these environmental activities or by other means, HUD becomes aware of any environmental deficiencies, HUD may take one or more of the following actions:

(i) In the case of problems found during limited monitoring, HUD may schedule in-depth monitoring at an earlier date or may schedule in-depth monitoring more frequently;

(ii) HUD may require attendance by staff of the responsible entity at HUD-sponsored or approved training, which will be provided periodically at various locations around the country;

(iii) HUD may refuse to accept the certifications of environmental compliance on subsequent grants;

(iv) HUD may suspend or terminate the responsible entity's assumption of the environmental review responsibility;

(v) HUD may initiate sanctions, corrective actions, or other remedies specified in program regulations or agreements or contracts with the recipient.

(2) HUD's responsibilities and action under paragraph (d)(1) of this section shall not be construed to limit or reduce any responsibility assumed by a responsible entity with respect to any particular release of funds under this part. Whether or not HUD takes action under paragraph (d)(1) of this section, the Certifying Officer remains the responsible Federal official under Sec. 58.13 with respect to projects and activities for which the Certifying Officer has submitted a certification under this part.